

IBM DB2 Universal Database



Release Notes

Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9)

IBM DB2 Universal Database



Release Notes

Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9)

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the general information under *Notices*.

This document contains proprietary information of IBM. It is provided under a license agreement and is protected by copyright law. The information contained in this publication does not include any product warranties, and any statements provided in this manual should not be interpreted as such.

You can order IBM publications online or through your local IBM representative.

- To order publications online, go to the IBM Publications Center at www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order
- To find your local IBM representative, go to the IBM Directory of Worldwide Contacts at www.ibm.com/planetwide

To order DB2 publications from DB2 Marketing and Sales in the United States or Canada, call 1-800-IBM-4YOU (426-4968).

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2002, 2005. All rights reserved.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

About the Release Notes	vii		
About this release	1		
New in this release	1		
9 Default page size increase	1		
9 Deadlock event monitor elements provide more information.	1		
9 Import and export utilities support nicknames	1		
9 DB2_SKIPINSERTED registry variable	3		
9 Direct I/O and Concurrent I/O enablement expanded to temporary table spaces	3		
9 Linux 2.6 kernel installation images.	3		
9 Configuring a more secure remote shell mechanism for DB2 DPF products (UNIX)	4	5	
9 DB2NOLIOAIO registry variable replaced by DB2LINUXAIO (Linux).	4		
9 New table function to query the database history file.	4	7	
9 Improved queries and refresh performance for DB2 Cube Views Optimization Advisor	4	7	
Product fix history	5	7	
Compatibility issues	5	7	
Backward compatibility.	5	7	
Product compatibility	9	7	
Installation, migration, upgrade, and configuration information.	19		
Hardware and software requirements.	19	3	
Installation notes	19	3	
9 New options for the DB2 Setup wizard (Windows).	19		
9 Changes to the DB2 Setup wizard (Windows)	20		
9 Extended security installation restrictions (Windows).	20		
3 Directory path cannot contain blanks (Linux and UNIX)	22		
9 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Requirement	22		
2 JDK levels for DB2 UDB (Linux on IA64 and Linux on POWER)	22		
7 Uncompressing installation images (Linux and UNIX)	22		
2 DB2 UDB does not allow non-English installation path (Windows)	23		
6 Downloading and uncompressing FixPaks for multiple products (Windows)	23		
7 Installing DB2 UDB from installation images (Linux and UNIX)	24		
7 Installing DB2 UDB from installation images (Windows).	24		
7 Disk space required for a DB2 UDB response file installation	25		
6 Restrictions to adding products using the db2setup command (Linux and UNIX)	25		
6 DB2 Web Tools	26		
			6 Binding Query Patroller packages after applying fixpaks
			6 Query Patroller installation at FixPak 3 level or later
			6 Query Patroller server installation
			7 Defining a new database partition group in Query Patroller
			2 Query Patroller client tools installation
			7 Recreating beta versions of databases.
			27 Installing MDAC files for national language versions of DB2 UDB
			28 DB2 license policy for DB2 Universal Database Workgroup Server Edition
			28 Installing additional Asian fonts (Linux).
			29 Configuring the Development Center to use Java Development Kits (Linux)
			30 Creating group and user IDs on United Linux 1.0 and SuSE Linux distributions
			30 Help system daemon does not start after installing with the db2_install command (UNIX and Linux)
			30 Ready for Tivoli enablement (UNIX)
			7 Installation image reduction tool – db2iprune (Windows).
			31 DB2 Universal Database, Version 8 documentation installation restriction (Windows).
			31 Previous installations updated to the latest level (Windows).
			31 System requirements for the DB2 .NET Data Provider (Windows)
			31 Installing DB2 Version 8 Clients and DB2 Connect PE as a non-Administrator (Windows)
			32 Migration notes
			7 Migrating DB2 Universal Database (Windows).
			1 Migrating DB2 Universal Database when using DataJoiner or replication
			5 Migrating a DB2 Version 8 Windows 32-bit database to Windows 64-bit
			9 Migration of EXPLAIN tables
			9 Migrating to DB2 UDB Version 8.2.2 from Version 7 in an MSCS environment
			2 Migrating XML Extender from previous versions
			4 Database migration (HP-UX on IA64).
			37 Uninstallation information
			7 Uninstalling DB2 UDB silently (Windows)
			7 Product code for DB2 Information Center removal using a silent uninstall (Windows).
			39
			Known limitations, problems, and workarounds
			41
			Limitations
			9 SNAP_GET_DB table function returns incomplete results
			9 IMPORT REPLACE does not honor the Not Logged Initially clause.
			7

8	Updated TPM and tp_mon_name values for	8	GSS-API security plug-ins do not support
8	xa_open string formats	8	multiple-flow authentication
7	Activating conversion tables for code pages 923	8	GSS-API security plug-ins do not support
7	and 924.	8	message encryption and signing
7	Conversion table files for euro-enabled code	7	Implicit ending of transactions in stand-alone
7	pages	7	applications
	API Reference	8	Distributed transaction support
8	SYNCPOINT option support		Application development: Programming Server
7	New field for SQLEDBDESC structure		Applications.
7	Correction to new field in the	9	Multiple result set common language runtime
7	SQLB-TBSPQRY-DATA structure	9	(CLR) procedures
	Application development: Building and Running	7	Common language runtime (CLR) routine
	Applications	7	execution control modes (EXECUTION
	Linux supported development software	7	CONTROL clause).
7	Customizing precompile and bind options for	7	Maximum decimal precision and scale in
7	SQL procedures	7	common language runtime (CLR) routines
7	C/C++ compile option required (Linux on		Command Reference
7	POWER 64-bit)	9	Migrating Databases
7	Compile and link command for Micro Focus	6	db2inidb - Initialize a mirrored database
7	COBOL stored procedures (HP-UX)	6	command
7	Minimum supported version of Micro Focus	7	Usage note for the db2iupdt command
7	COBOL (HP-UX)	7	New parameter for the db2sqljcustomize
7	Setting environment variables for Micro Focus	7	command
7	COBOL stored procedures (Windows)	7	New parameter for the sqlj command
	Application development: Call Level Interface (CLI)	9	Monitor and troubleshoot command (db2pd)
9	Additional environment attributes	9	updates
9	Dynamic scrollable cursors requirement	8	Update to the SET CLIENT command
9	ReceiveTimeout CLI/ODBC configuration	8	Update to the PRECOMPILE command
9	keyword	8	Update to the UPDATE HISTORY FILE
9	SQL_ATTR_RECEIVE_TIMEOUT statement	8	command
9	attribute	8	Updates to the EXPORT and IMPORT
9	Reopt CLI/ODBC configuration keyword	8	commands
9	SQL_ATTR_REOPT statement attribute	8	Update to the LOAD command
9	CurrentPackageSet CLI/ODBC configuration	8	File type modifiers for the load utility
9	keyword	8	File type modifiers for the import utility
9	SQL_ATTR_CURRENT_PACKAGE_SET	7	ATTACH command
9	connection attribute	7	RECOVER DATABASE command
7	MapBigintCDefault CLI/ODBC configuration	7	UPDATE HISTORY FILE command
7	keyword	7	db2updv8 - Update database to version 8
7	DescribeOutputLevel CLI/ODBC configuration	7	current level command
7	keyword	7	Formatting trap files (Windows)
	Application development: Programming Client		Data Movement
	Applications	9	Bind files used by the export, import and load
8	OleDbReportIsLongForLongTypes CLI/ODBC	9	utilities
8	configuration keyword	9	Using import with buffered inserts
8	OleDbSQLColumnsSortByOrdinal CLI/ODBC	8	Index information lost when the import utility is
8	configuration keyword	8	used
8	DB2 Data Source property group for the IBM		Data Recovery and High Availability
8	DB2 OLE DB Provider.	8	High availability disaster recovery overview
8	Incorrect URL syntax in the DB2Binder syntax	7	Cross-platform backup and restore support
8	diagram	7	Backing up to tape (Linux)
8	Rerouting DB2 Universal JDBC driver clients	7	Tivoli Storage Manager
7	Customizing the DB2 Universal JDBC driver	7	Value restrictions for the HADR local host and
7	configuration properties	7	local service parameters
7	db2secFreeToken function removed	7	Additional system requirements for high
8	Deploy custom security plug-ins carefully	7	availability disaster recovery
7	Security plug-ins	7	Non-replicated operations for high availability
7	Security plug-in APIs	7	disaster recovery
7	Security plug-in naming conventions (Linux	7	HADR does not support raw logs
7	and UNIX)		Data Warehouse Center
7	Restrictions on security plug-in libraries		

9	DB2 Data Warehouse Center requires Unicode format database	116	6	Nested query behavior	136
9	Defining DB2 warehouse sources and targets	117	6	Limitations by SQL statement type	136
8	Updates to the Business Intelligence tutorial	117	7	Resolution limitation when using the Terminal Services Client	136
6	Setting the purge limit for warehouse log files	118	7	New group support for query submissions	136
4	Data Warehouse Center support for CURSOR load	118	7	Query Patroller schedule limitations	137
4	Unicode warehouse control database migration and limitations	118	7	Authorization required to use RUN IN BACKGROUND QUERY command	137
7	Change in date format for Modified column	118	7	Creating an alias for a result table	137
7	Defining statistical transformers in the Data Warehouse Center	119	8	Fenced user ID requires write access qpdiag.log file and path	138
7	Prerequisite for the iSeries warehouse agent	119	Quick Beginnings	138	
9	DB2 .NET Data Provider	119	9	Clarification of DB2 UDB client support	138
9	Concurrent active data reader support	119	9	Modifying kernel parameters (Linux)	138
7	DB2Connection.ConnectionString property	119	9	Modifying kernel parameters (Solaris Operating Environment)	140
9	DB2 Connect	120	9	DB2 Universal Database Express Edition Version 8.2 Basics manual available for download	140
9	Change to authentication type negotiation through a gateway	120	9	Verifying that your databases are ready for migration	140
9	New security scenario	120	7	Common Criteria certification for DB2 UDB	140
7	Corrections to diagrams	120	7	Spatial Extender	141
7	Development Center	121	7	Verifying the Spatial Extender installation	141
9	DB2 Development Center Version 8.2 requires level 9.2.9 of the Distributed Debugger	121	9	SQL Administrative Routines	141
9	Length restriction in the DB2 Development Center Change Variable Range window	121	9	Incorrect column name documented in result set for SNAP_GET_DYN_SQL table function	141
9	Restrictions to DB2 Universal type 2 and type 4 drivers	121	9	Snapshot monitor table functions have version-specific views	141
7	GUI Tools	121	9	GET_DB_CONFIG procedure requires an 8K minimum page size for a user temporary table space	142
8	Modifying the statement termination character	121	9	SQL Reference	142
7	Database unavailable status in the database details pane of the Control Center	123	9	EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC: A new Explain table	142
7	Default write to table output generation (Create Event Monitor)	124	9	EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC_DATA: A new Explain table	143
7	Information Catalog Center	124	7	Schema used by the Explain facility	144
7	Configuration sample scripts	124	7	String representations of datetime values	144
7	Web server configuration	124	System monitor	145	
7	Installation and Configuration Supplement	124	9	Health indicators summary	145
7	Application server for DB2 UDB	124	7	Decoupled applications list without connection concentrator enabled	145
7	DB2 Embedded Application Server enablement	126	7	Progress monitoring of the runtime rollback process	145
7	Deploying DB2 Web Tools	126	7	XML Extender	146
7	Direct I/O on block devices (Linux)	131	8	Decomposing documents larger than 1 MB	146
7	DB2 Information Center daemon (Linux and UNIX)	131	7	Configuring MQ XML UDFs with XML Extender	146
8	Response file keywords and sample files	132	7	XML Extender environment variable	147
7	Response file installation error codes	133	7	DB2DXX_MIN_TMPFILE_SIZE	147
7	Required user accounts for installation of DB2 servers (Windows)	133	7	DB2XML.XMLVarchar UDT redefinition	147
7	Asynchronous I/O support (Linux)	133			
8	db2ln command modified to create DB2 UDB 64-bit library links (Linux and UNIX)	133			
8	Query Patroller	134			
9	Query class behavior update	134			
8	Definition updates for managed query states	134			
5	Create Explain tables before running Query Patroller historical data generator	135			
5	Checking Query Patroller log files for historical analysis	135			
6	Abnormal shutdown of the historical data generator	135			
6	Dynamic query class updates	135			

Appendix A. DB2 UDB FixPak CD directory structure 149

Appendix B. Contacting IBM 151
Product information 151

Appendix C. Notices 153
Trademarks 155

About the Release Notes

Content:

The release notes contain the latest information for the following DB2[®], Version 8 products:

DB2[®] Universal Database Personal Edition
DB2 Universal Database™ Workgroup Server Edition
DB2 Universal Database Workgroup Server Unlimited Edition
DB2 Universal Database Enterprise Server Edition
DB2 Personal Developer's Edition
DB2 Universal Developer's Edition
DB2 Warehouse Manager
DB2 Warehouse Manager Sourcing Agent for z/OS[®]
DB2 Data Links Manager
DB2 Net Search Extender
DB2 Spatial Extender
DB2 Intelligent Miner™ Scoring
DB2 Intelligent Miner Modeling
DB2 Intelligent Miner Visualization
DB2 Connect™ Application Server Edition
DB2 Connect Enterprise Edition
DB2 Connect Personal Edition
DB2 Connect Unlimited Edition
DB2 Query Patroller™

Version information:

1 The most up-to-date documentation is available in the latest version of the DB2
1 Information Center, which is accessed through a browser. The URL for
1 downloading the latest documentation is provided in the Additional resources
1 section that follows this section.

1 Revision marks in the DB2 Information Center documentation indicate text that
1 has been added or changed since the PDF information for Version 8.1 was
1 originally made available. A vertical bar (|) indicates information that was added
1 at the time that Version 8.1 was first released. A numeric indicator, such as a 1 or a
1 2, indicates that the information was added for the FixPak or level ending in the
1 same number. Examples:

- 1 • 1 indicates that the information was added or changed in FixPak 1
- 1 • 2 indicates that the information was changed for Version 8.1.2
- 1 • 8 indicates that the information was changed for Version 8.2 FixPak 1
1 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 8)
- 1 • 9 indicates that the information was changed for Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to
1 Version 8.1 FixPak 9)

6 Directory paths:

6 Windows[®] systems use backslashes (\) to delimit directories in a directory path.
6 Linux[™] and UNIX[®] systems use forward slashes (/) as delimiters. The Release
6 Notes follow this convention when the information is platform specific. However,
6 when the information is platform independent, you might need to enter the
6 directory path differently than shown. For example, if you have a Windows
6 system, you must enter the directory path using backslashes (\) if the Release

6 Notes show forward slashes (/). Conversely, if you have a Linux or UNIX system,
6 you must enter the directory path using forward slashes (/) if the Release Notes
6 show backslashes (\).

7 **DB2 Information Integrator:**

7 For information about currently known outstanding issues with DB2 Information
7 Integrator and its associated technologies, including federated systems, SQL
7 replication, Q replication, event publishing, Web services, and metadata
7 management, see the DB2 Information Integrator Release Notes. The DB2
7 Information Integrator Release Notes are available on the DB2 Information
7 Integrator support Web page at:
7 <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/integration/db2ii/support.html>

Additional resources:

1 The *Data Links Manager Administration Guide and Reference* was updated in PDF
1 form (book number SC27-1221-01) at the time of FixPak 1 and is available for
1 download at the DB2 support site:
1 <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/udb/support.html>.

Documentation for the DB2 Life Sciences Data Connect product is available for
download from the IBM® software site:
<http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/lifesciencesdataconnect/>

If you want to view the DB2 documentation in HTML format, you can access the
DB2 HTML Information Center online from
<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2help/>.

Alternatively, you can install the DB2 HTML Information Center on your system; a
DB2 HTML Documentation CD image is available for download from the same Web
site. Updates are made to the DB2 HTML documentation with every release. For
the latest documentation, access the DB2 HTML Information Center online or
download the *DB2 HTML Documentation* CD image for installation on your system.
PDF documentation is updated less frequently than the HTML Information Center.

More information on the DB2 Development Center and DB2 for z/OS® is available
at <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/os390/spb/>.

For the latest information about the DB2 family of products, obtain a free
subscription to *DB2 Magazine*. The online edition of the magazine is available at
<http://www.db2mag.com>; instructions for requesting a subscription are also
posted on this site.

About this release

New in this release

This section provides a brief summary of the enhancements available with this release of DB2 Universal Database.

9 **Default page size increase**

9 When creating a database, DB2® Universal Database (UDB) now allows you to
9 establish a default page size that is greater than the previous default of 4096 (4 K)
9 bytes. After creating the new database with an explicit page size, that page size
9 becomes the new default for all buffer pools and table spaces you create within the
9 database. The initial table spaces for the database (SYSCATSPACE, TEMPSPACE1,
9 and USERSPACE1), as well as the system buffer pool (IBMDEFAULTBP), use the
9 new default page size. Once the default has been set, you can still explicitly create
9 other buffer pools and table spaces using a page size different from the default.

9 The new default page size can have a value of 4096 (4 K), 8192 (8 K), 16384 (16 K),
9 or 32768 (32 K) bytes.

9 If you create a database with a page size larger than 4 K, that database cannot be
9 migrated to a database with a different default page size.

9 **Deadlock event monitor elements provide more information**

9 Several new clauses have been added to the CREATE EVENT MONITOR
9 statement to provide detailed information about statements. The increased detail
9 includes historical information about statements and statement values when a
9 deadlock occurs.

9 The CREATE EVENT MONITOR statement has been modified so that
9 DEADLOCKS WITH DETAILS can use the HISTORY option to capture historical
9 information about the statements in the current unit of work and information
9 about the statement compilation environment. Additionally, the VALUES option
9 can be specified to capture data values for any input variables for each SQL
9 statement.

9 When a deadlock event monitor is active using the new HISTORY or VALUES
9 options, performance will suffer because data values are copied and memory is
9 used to store the data. The degree to which performance will suffer depends on
9 the number of applications and database partitions involved in the deadlock
9 scenario. Another factor which affects performance is the number of statements
9 and data values in the statement history lists.

9 **Import and export utilities support nicknames**

9 **Import utility:**

9 Prior to Version 8.2.2, the Import utility did not support the use of nicknames.

9 Starting with Version 8.2.2, **IMPORT INTO NICKNAME (remote table)** is
9 supported with the following restrictions:

- The federated wrapper, which manages the operations on the nickname must be one of the following relational wrappers:
 - DB2 DRDA[®]
 - Oracle NET8
 - Sybase CTLIB
 - SQL Server MSSQLODBC3
 - Informix[®]
 - Teradata

The ODBC and OLEDB wrappers are not supported.

- The remote target, on which the nickname is defined, must be a table.
- The file type must be IXF, ASC or DEL.
- Online Import mode must be used. Specifically, the ALLOW WRITE ACCESS clause must be specified.
- The COMMITCOUNT AUTOMATIC mode is not allowed. COMMITCOUNT *n* must be specified, where *n* is a valid non-zero number.
- INSERT and INSERT_UPDATE are the only supported operations.
- The following column types are not supported:
 - Datalink
 - LOBs
 - Generated columns
- The following file type modifiers are not supported:
 - indexixf or indexschema
 - dldelfiletype
 - nodefaults or use defaults
 - no_type_idfiletype
 - generatedignore, generatedmissing, identityignore, or identitymissing
 - lobsinfile
- Hierarchical tables (typed tables) are not supported.
- If the database was created prior to installing DB2 UDB Version 8.2.2, the **db2updv8** utility program must be run against the target database after migrating. This requirement creates two new stored procedures that are required by the Import utility.

Failure to meet the restrictions listed previously results in an error with SQL code -27999:

```
SQL27999N The requested IMPORT operation into a remote target
          (nickname) cannot be performed.
          Reason code = "<reason-code>".
```

Note: Import into a nickname for a DB2/VM remote table does not work correctly for binary data (FOR BIT DATA) columns at this time.

Export utility:

Prior to Version 8.2.2, the Export utility did not support the use of nicknames.

Starting with Version 8.2.2, **EXPORT INTO NICKNAME (remote table)** is supported with the following restrictions:

- The description of the target table necessary to perform the Import CREATE operation is not saved in the IXF file format. You should manually recreate the target table and nickname, if necessary, prior to running the IMPORT command.
- The supported file types are IXF and DEL.

DB2_SKIPINSERTED registry variable

You can use the DB2_SKIPINSERTED registry variable to skip uncommitted inserted rows for Cursor Stability (CS) and Read Stability (RS) isolation levels.

The registry variables DB2_SKIPDELETED and DB2_EVALUNCOMMITTED are used to skip uncommitted deletions and uncommitted updates. Otherwise, CS and RS isolation levels require the processing of committed data only.

If you decide that you can skip any row that is locked because it is an uncommitted inserted row, you can now turn the DB2_SKIPINSERTED registry variable on to allow you to skip those rows. Having this registry variable on produces greater concurrency and would therefore be the preferred choice for most applications.

There are cases where skipping uncommitted inserts may not be preferred. For example:

- When two applications use a table to pass data between them
- When an application does not use UPDATE statements, but instead deletes the old data and then inserts the new data.

Direct I/O and Concurrent I/O enablement expanded to temporary table spaces

Starting with DB2 Universal Database™ (UDB) Version 8.2.2, enablement of Direct I/O on all platforms and Concurrent I/O on AIX® is expanded to include SMS and DMS temporary table spaces. Similar to DB2 UDB Version 8.2, this feature can be switched on using the NO FILE SYSTEM CACHING keyword in the CREATE and ALTER SQL statements.

Linux 2.6 kernel installation images

Starting with DB2 Universal Database (UDB) for Linux™ Version 8.2.2, a new set of installation images is available for Linux distributions based on the 2.6 kernel for the following architectures:

- x86: 32-bit Intel® and AMD processors
- x86-64: 64-bit Intel EM64T and AMD64 processors

The new installation images automatically enables the asynchronous I/O and vector I/O performance enhancements for DB2 UDB for Linux.

You can install these new installation images only on Linux distributions based on a 2.6 kernel, including Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 and SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 9. The installation images for the 2.6 kernel include the phrase "2.6 kernel" on the CD label to differentiate them from the installation images for the 2.4 kernel.

If you have installed a previous version of DB2 UDB for Linux on a distribution based on a 2.6 kernel, you must install the FixPak for DB2 UDB for Linux (2.6 kernel) to upgrade your DB2 UDB installation to Version 8.2.2 or higher.

Configuring a more secure remote shell mechanism for DB2 DPF products (UNIX)

Prior to Version 8.2.2, DB2 database partitioning feature (DPF) products on UNIX[®] relied on rsh as the remote shell mechanism to execute commands on remote DB2 nodes. For example, when issuing the db2start command, remote nodes would receive the database manager start command using the rsh remote shell program.

Starting with Version 8.2.2, the remote shell mechanism can be configured through a new registry variable DB2RSHCMD. This registry variable allows you to specify the full path name of a more secure remote shell command, for example /usr/bin/ssh. When you set DB2RSHCMD, all commands sent to remote nodes will use the specified remote shell program. The remote shell program must be configured such that the instance owner is authorized to remote shell into each DB2 node without requiring any additional authentication, such as passwords or passphrases.

DB2NOLIOAIO registry variable replaced by DB2LINUXAIO (Linux)

The DB2 Universal Database (UDB) registry variable DB2NOLIOAIO is deprecated as of Version 8.2.2. For Linux users, the DB2NOLIOAIO registry variable has been replaced with DB2LINUXAIO.

- To enable asynchronous I/O (AIO) support on Linux, run the following command:

```
db2set DB2LINUXAIO=true
```

and restart DB2 UDB.

Note: To use AIO, users must install libaio-0.3.98 or later and have a kernel that supports AIO.

- To disable asynchronous I/O (AIO) support on Linux, run the following command:

```
db2set DB2LINUXAIO=false
```

and restart DB2 UDB.

New table function to query the database history file

Prior to DB2 Universal Database Version 8.2.2, the CLP's LIST HISTORY command or C APIs were required to query the database history file for the database partition you were connected to.

Starting with Version 8.2.2, you can use the ADMIN_LIST_HIST() table function to query the database history file. Once connected to a database, ADMIN_LIST_HIST() returns the contents of the database history file in a table format for the database partition you are connected to.

Improved queries and refresh performance for DB2 Cube Views Optimization Advisor

The summary tables recommended by the Optimization Advisor in DB2 Cube Views provide better query coverage and faster refresh performance. The recommended summary tables are improved so that they provide better coverage of the cube model and can improve the performance of more queries than in past

9 releases. The recommended refresh scripts now use the cursor load function when
9 possible to shorten the time it takes to refresh the data in a summary table.

Product fix history

For a list of Authorized Program Analysis Reports (APARs) addressed by this fix pack, visit the following Web page:

<http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/udb/support.html>

Compatibility issues

Backward compatibility

Backward compatibility of DB2 UDB Version 8.2 databases

8 If you create a database with DB2 Universal Database™ Version 8.2, you cannot use
8 that database at a Version 8.1 level. That database can only be used at a Version 8.2
8 or later level.

8 Databases created at the DB2 UDB Version 8.2 level may have additional
8 functionality that was not available on earlier versions. This difference may result
8 in unexpected and undesirable behavior if you attempt to move your new database
8 to a previous release of DB2 UDB.

8 **Note:** The only way to move a database from Version 8.2 back to Version 8.1 is if
8 the database was originally created under Version 8.1. Even then, backward
8 migration is possible only after running the **db2demigdb** tool. However, you
8 might encounter problems if you used built-in functions that have changed
8 in Version 8.2.

Clarification of DB2 UDB client support

8 The "DB2 client overview" section of the *DB2 Quick Beginnings for Clients* book
8 states the following:

8 DB2 clients can connect to DB2 servers two releases later or one release
8 earlier than the client's release level, as well as to servers at the same release
8 level.

8 The amendment to that statement is as follows:

8 While connections from Version N clients to Version N + 2 servers are
8 possible in some environments, this connection is a supported configuration
8 only as long as Version N is in service. Once Version N is withdrawn from
8 service, this configuration is no longer supported.

8 DB2 Version 6 clients connecting to a DB2 Version 8 server is no longer
8 supported because Version 6 has been withdrawn from service.

8 Similarly for DB2 UDB server support, a Version N client can connect to a
8 Version N - 1 server, unless the Version N - 1 server is out of service.

Health registry changes when migrating from DB2 UDB Version 8.2 back to DB2 UDB Version 8.1

7 Any registry changes made at the DB2 UDB Version 8.2 level are lost when you
7 migrate back to DB2 UDB Version 8.1. The registry reverts to the version 8.1

HealthRules.reg file that contains the settings that existed before you upgraded to DB2 UDB Version 8.2 and started using the settings in the HealthRules2.reg file.

Alternate FixPaks (Linux and UNIX)

Prior to DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8, FixPaks functioned only as updates to installed DB2 UDB packages or file sets in one fixed location. This meant that FixPaks installation replaced existing files with updated ones, which were provided in the FixPaks. Multiple DB2 FixPak levels could not exist on a single system. Now, DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition (ESE) can exist at multiple fix pack levels in the same system for Linux™-based and UNIX®-based operating systems. This feature, supported in production operating environments since Version 8.1.2, is achieved using the following two FixPak types:

regular FixPaks

- Are available not only for ESE, but for all supported DB2 Version 8 products for the related platforms
- Can be installed directly on top of the existing installation either in the /usr/opt/db2_08_01 directory on AIX® or the /opt/IBM/db2/V8.1 directory on other platforms
- Can not be applied on top of any installed alternate FixPaks

alternate FixPaks

- Can be installed as completely new copies of DB2 UDB ESE
- Are installed in a predefined location other than the location used for a regular DB2 UDB installation
- There is no GUI installation procedure for alternate FixPaks

Notes:

1. You are *not* required to perform a multiple FixPak installation if it is unnecessary for your environment.
2. Starting with IBM DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition (ESE) for Linux and UNIX, Version 8.1.2, fix packs are supported in production operating environments when they are installed as Multiple fix packs.
3. On Linux, alternate FixPaks are available on the following platforms only:
 - x86 (32-bit)
 - S/390® (31-bit)
4. Two or more DB2 instances running at different fixpak levels on the same system do not support operations which make DB2 Internal Procedure Calls (IPCs), such as Federated queries. All instances involved in such operations on the same system should be at the same DB2 fixpak level.
5. DB2 UDB Version 8 alternate FixPaks only support DB2 ESE on supported Linux and Unix platforms.

To update a multiple FixPak instance to a different FixPak level, perform one of the following operations:

- Install the appropriate regular FixPak on the General Availability (GA) installation and update the instance by running **db2iupdt** from the existing GA path.
- Install the appropriate alternate FixPak to its own unique path and update the instance by running **db2iupdt** from this path.

For further information regarding downloading alternate FixPaks, visit the IBM support site at <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/udb/support.html>.

9
9
9
9
9
9
9
9

Query Patroller Version 8.2.2 query data compatibility with earlier FixPaks

Starting with Version 8.2.2, the contents of the TRACK_QUERY_INFO Query Patroller control table that were captured in a 32-bit environment can be used in a 64-bit environment. This capability eases the migration effort to a 64-bit environment. Information captured in the TRACK_QUERY_INFO Query Patroller control table at Version 8.2.2 cannot be used to generate historical data for that query or to execute held queries under any previous FixPak level.

Data Warehouse Center previous server support restrictions

The following limitations exist for previous server support for DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Enterprise Server Edition Version 8 Data Warehouse Center:

Large Object (LOB) support

- If you are using a warehouse control database on a server that is earlier than DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition Version 8 you cannot work with LOBs. You must upgrade the warehouse control database to the correct level, or you can move the control database to the system on which the DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition Version 8 warehouse server is installed and use the warehouse control database locally from that system.
- To move LOBs between the Data Warehouse Center and DB2 UDB, you must upgrade to DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition, Version 8.

Systems Network Architecture (SNA) support

If you use SNA to connect to your warehouse sources and targets, you must change the configuration to TCP/IP over SNA or use the Windows NT[®] warehouse agent.

Support for EXPORT and LOAD utilities

The Data Warehouse Center Version 8 LOAD utility does not support a Version 7 target database. If you want to keep your target as a Version 7 database, then you must change the LOAD step to a SQL Select and Insert step. SQL Select and Insert steps use a DELETE* statement followed by SELECT and INSERT statements. SQL Select and Insert steps require the database to log all transactions. As a result, the performance for SQL Select and Insert steps is not as efficient as it is for the EXPORT and LOAD utilities.

2
2
2
2
2
2
2

Development Center APARs required for SQLJ and SQL Assist support on DB2 UDB for OS/390, Version 6 and DB2 UDB for z/OS, Version 7

When using the Development Center on an Application Development client for DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8 on Windows or UNIX operating systems, the following APARs need to be installed on the server to enable SQLJ and SQL Assist support:

2
2
2
6
2
6

DB2 UDB for z/OS, Version 7

- PQ65125 - Provides SQLJ support for building Java[™] SQLJ stored procedures
- PQ76858 - Provides SQL Assist support

DB2 UDB for OS/390[®], Version 6

- PQ76858 - Provides SQL Assist support

Two versions of SQL Assist are launched from DB2 UDB

You can invoke both Version 7 and Version 8 of SQL Assist from within DB2 Universal Database, Version 8. You can start Version 7 from the DB2 Data Warehouse Center. All other centers start the latest Version 8. The product online help has additional information for SQL Assist, Version 7.

Change in Unicode server behavior

In Version 7, Unicode servers ignored any graphic code pages sent by applications at connect time and assumed that UCS2 Unicode (code page 1200) was being used. Version 8 Unicode servers now respect the code page sent by the client.

Database configuration parameter changes during migration

DB2 UDB Version 8.2 uses a new 16K database configuration parameter file named SQLDBCONF. This is a separate file from the DB2 UDB Version 8.1 4K database configuration parameter file named SQLDBCON.

After migrating to DB2 UDB Version 8.2, the product migrates the contents of the Version 8.1 4K file and uses the 16K file for logging database configuration parameter changes. The Version 8.1 4K file is retained, but it is not used.

If you migrate back to DB2 UDB Version 8.1, the DB2 UDB Version 8.1 product reverts to using the original Version 8.1 4K file for logging database configuration parameter changes. The Version 8.2 16K file is retained, but it is not recognized by the DB2 UDB Version 8.1 product. Changes made to the 16K database configuration parameter file between migrating to Version 8.2 and migrating back to Version 8.1 are, in effect, concealed from the earlier DB2 UDB level because the changes are not migrated to the original 4K file.

In addition, if you migrate to DB2 UDB Version 8.2 again, the DB2 UDB Version 8.2 product recognizes that the 16K database configuration file already exists and reverts to using the Version 8.2 16K file for logging database configuration parameter changes. The Version 8.1 4K file is retained, but it is not recognized by the DB2 UDB Version 8.2 product. Changes made to the 4K database configuration parameter file between migrating back to Version 8.1 and remigrating to Version 8.2 are, in effect, concealed from the more recent DB2 UDB level because the changes are not migrated to the existing 16K file.

db2diag.log format message enhancements

The db2diag.log file format has been improved in a number of ways for Version 8.2. The log file is now easier to read manually and easier to parse in software. The improvements include:

- Each entry has a complete set of header information
- Message and data portions of the logging record are clearly marked, making the logging record easier to use and to understand
- Timestamps with time zone are included for each record
- Each field has a clear field name in uppercase letters
- Header and message field line lengths are restricted to 80 characters
- New fields have been added, most notably a severity-level field to help you find the most important entries

Other changes have been made as well, such as changing the **database** field name to **DB**.

Event records have been added as diagnostic messages to the db2diag.log file. Examples of such events are:

- Updates to the profile registry
 - Updates to configuration parameters
- Event records have "Event" specified in the **LEVEL** field. Although events are not errors, they might be logged at diagnostic levels other than 4 (Informational) or 3 (Warning) depending on their importance.

db2set profile registry variables and DB or DBM configuration parameters are now logged

Starting with Version 8.2, the following updates are logged in the db2diag.log file:

- db2set profile registry updates
- database and database manager configuration parameter updates

The messages for these updates are logged at high diagnostic levels due to their importance.

The following types of db2set profile registry updates are logged:

Modify

The db2set *variableName=value* command yields a db2diag.log entry such as:

```
2004-04-22-19.19.14.156959-240 I79582C286          LEVEL: Event
PID      : 2437242                TID   : 1          PROC  : db2set
INSTANCE: db2user                 NODE  : 000
FUNCTION: DB2 UDB, oper system services, db2set_main, probe:40
CHANGE  : CFG DB2SET: DB2DBDFT: From: "OLddb" To: "SAMPLE"
```

Delete The db2set -r command yields a db2diag.log entry such as:

```
CHANGE  : CFG DB2SET: DB2DBDFT: From: "SAMPLE" To: ""
```

Note: The header information is omitted in the preceding example.

Reset The db2set *variableName=value* command yields a db2diag.log entry such as:

```
CHANGE  : CFG DB2SET: Profile registry was reset
```

Note: The header information is omitted in the preceding example.

Examples for DB and DBM configuration parameter updates are

```
CHANGE  : CFG DB SAMPLE: "Maxlocks" From: "10" To: "20"
```

```
CHANGE  : CFG DBM: "Diaglevel" From: "3" To: "1"
```

```
CHANGE  : CFG DBM: Reset to the system defaults
```

Note: The header information is omitted in the preceding examples.

To find these configuration update messages, use db2diag tool. For example:

- To select all events: **db2diag -level event**
- To select change events: **db2diag -g "changeevent="**

Product compatibility

JDK 1.4.2 supported by DB2 Universal Database for Linux, UNIX, and Windows

DB2 Universal Database™ (UDB) for Linux, UNIX, and Windows®, Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9), supports JDK 1.4.2 on all DB2 UDB supported

32-bit and 64-bit workstation operating system environments. This support includes, but is not limited to, support for building and running Java™ client applications, building and running Java routines from the command line, building and running Java routines from the DB2 Development Center where it is supported, as well as for running other DB2 tools.

When you install DB2 UDB, Version 8.2, the latest supported version of the Java developer kit will also be installed if it is not already installed, unless the DB2 UDB installation is an update of a previous DB2 UDB Version 8 installation. If you are updating a previous installation of DB2 UDB Version 8, you must install the Java developer kit from the CD.

The following table indicates the DB2 supported 32-bit and 64-bit workstation operating system environments and the latest supported JDK level for each of them. For information about earlier JDK support, refer to the Java Application Development Web page at <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/udb/ad/v8/java/>.

Table 1. DB2 supported environments with corresponding supported JDK levels

DB2 supported environment	Latest supported JDK level
Windows IA/AMD 32-bit	JDK 1.4.2
Windows IA 64-bit	JDK 1.4.2
Windows AMD/EM64T 64-bit	JDK 1.4.2
AIX® 4.3.3 32-bit	JDK 1.3.1 SR6 ^[2]
AIX 5 (hybrid ^[1])	JDK 1.4.2
Solaris (hybrid ^[1])	JDK 1.4.2
HPUX RISC & Itanium (hybrid ^[1])	JDK 1.4.2.01
Linux AMD/EM64T 32-bit, 64-bit (hybrid ^[1])	JDK 1.4.2 ^[3]
Linux IA 32-bit	JDK 1.4.2
Linux IA 64-bit	JDK 1.4.2
Linux 390 31-bit	JDK 1.4.2
Linux 390 64-bit	JDK 1.4.2
Linux PPC (hybrid ^[1])	JDK 1.4.2

Notes:

1. Hybrid refers to an installation image that contains 32-bit and 64-bit support
2. JDK 1.3.1 Service Release 6 is the only JDK version supported for AIX 4.3.3.
3. There is no DB2 graphical user interface tools support on Linux AMD/EM64T (32-bit and 64-bit) with JDK 1.4.2.

An updated procedure for setting up the Linux Java Environment which is provided next.

Setting up the Linux Java environment

Prerequisites:

- Before implementing the following instructions, perform the setup outlined in the topic "Setting up the UNIX Java environment", which can be found in the *Application Development Guide: Building and Running Applications* Guide.

- The commands in the following instructions require root authority.

Procedure:

To build Java applications on Linux with DB2 JDBC support:

1. Install and configure one of the supported developer kits listed in the topic "Linux supported development software", which can be found in the *Application Development Guide: Building and Running Applications Guide*.

To run Java stored procedures or user-defined functions, the Linux runtime linker must be able to access certain Java shared libraries, and DB2 UDB must be able to load both these libraries and the Java virtual machine. The process that runs stored procedures and user-defined functions loads libraries only in secure locations, as defined in the `/etc/ld.so.conf` file. One of these secure locations is `/usr/lib`. The remaining instructions show which libraries require symbolic links in `/usr/lib`.

2. Create symbolic links in `/usr/lib` to point to the Java shared libraries. Depending on the JDK version that you are using, you will have link to different shared libraries:

For the IBM® Developer Kit 1.3

Create symbolic links to `libjava.so`, `libjvm.so`, and `libhpi.so`. You can create the symbolic links by running the following commands as root:

```
cd /usr/lib
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libjava.so .
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/classic/libjvm.so .
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libhpi.so .
```

where `JAVAHOME` is the base directory for the IBM Developer Kit. If DB2 UDB cannot find these libraries, you will get a -4301 error when trying to run a Java routine, and there will be messages in the administration notification log about libraries not found.

For the IBM Developer Kit 1.4.1

Create symbolic links to `libjava.so`, `libjvm.so`, `libhpi.so`, and `libjsig.so`. You can create the symbolic links by running the following commands as root:

```
cd /usr/lib
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libjava.so
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/classic/libjvm.so
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libhpi.so
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libjsig.so
```

where `JAVAHOME` is the base directory for the IBM Developer Kit. If DB2 UDB cannot find these libraries, you will get a -4301 error when trying to run a Java routine, and there will be messages in the administration notification log about libraries not found.

For the IBM Developer Kit 1.4.2

Create symbolic links to `libjava.so`, `libjvm.so`, `libhpi.so`, `libjsig.so`, `libjitc.so`, `libxhpi.so`, and `libdbgmalloc.so`. You can create the symbolic links by running the following commands as root:

```
cd /usr/lib
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libjava.so
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/classic/libjvm.so
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libhpi.so
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libjsig.so
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libjitc.so
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libxhpi.so
ln -fs JAVAHOME/jre/bin/libdbgmalloc.so
```

9 where JAVAHOME is the base directory for the IBM Developer Kit. If DB2
9 UDB cannot find these libraries, you will get a -4301 error when trying
9 to run a Java routine, and there will be messages in the administration
9 notification log about libraries not found.

9 **Alternative procedure:**

9 Instead of explicitly creating links to the shared libraries in the /usr/lib directory,
9 you can add the Java shared library names to the /etc/ld.so.conf file. If you add
9 the Java shared library names to the /etc/ld.so.conf file, you must run the
9 **ldconfig** command with root level access after you make your changes. If you
9 encounter any problems with this alternative procedure, create the links in the
9 /usr/lib directory as previously instructed.

Microsoft XP fix is needed on 64-bit operating systems

If you are using the Microsoft® XP 64-bit operating system (2600) configured to use the NETBIOS protocol with the DB2 family of products, you need to obtain a hotfix from Microsoft. Contact Microsoft with the Knowledge Base article number Q317437.

2 **Windows XP operating systems**

2 The Windows XP Home Edition operating system is supported only by DB2
2 Universal Database (UDB) Personal Edition products.

2 The Windows XP Professional operating system is supported by the following DB2
2 products:

- 8 • DB2 UDB Express Edition
- 2 • DB2 UDB Personal Edition
- 2 • DB2 UDB Workgroup Server Edition
- 5 • DB2 Connect™ Personal Edition

9 The following DB2 products are supported on Windows XP for development or
9 test purposes only (production environments require Windows 2000 or Windows
9 Server 2003):

- 9 • DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition
- 5 • DB2 Connect Enterprise Edition

8 **DB2 UDB HADR separately priced option available**

8 In DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8.2, customers of DB2 UDB Workgroup
8 Server Edition and DB2 UDB Express Edition (when licensed based on per user
8 pricing model) were not able to install the DB2 UDB High Availability Disaster
8 Recovery (HADR) separately priced option. This problem has been fixed in DB2
8 UDB Version 8.2 FixPak 1 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 8).

8 **DB2 Warehouse Manager (Version 8.2) and IBM DB2 OLAP 8 Server FP3 and later**

8 The OLAP utilities in DB2 Warehouse Manager Standard Edition, Version 8.2 are
8 not compatible with IBM DB2 OLAP Server™ FP3 (Essbase API level 6.5.4) and
8 later. You are advised to use DB2 OLAP Server FP2 (Essbase 6.5.3) or earlier until
8 this problem is resolved.

9 **Raw I/O log enablement (Linux with 2.6 kernel)**

9 To use logs with raw I/O devices prior to DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version
9 8.2.2, it was necessary to bind a physical device to the Linux raw character device
9 driver with the raw utility. Starting with DB2 UDB Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to

Version 8.1 FixPak 9), on the 2.6 Linux kernel, raw I/O for logs can be specified directly. DB2 UDB will take advantage of a special open flag in the 2.6 kernel and enable raw I/O for logs by default. For example, to use device partition /dev/sdb1 for raw logs for the SAMPLE database, issue the following command:

```
db2 update db cfg for sample using newlogpath /dev/sdb1
```

The raw character driver is deprecated in the 2.6 kernel and may be removed from future kernels. In addition, Linux distributions might not include the driver in their default kernels.

Support for the special open flag in the 2.6 kernel to enable raw I/O for table spaces was previously added in Version 8.2.

Red Hat Linux support with the Data Warehouse Center

DB2 Universal Database, Version 8.2 supports Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS Versions 3 and 2.1. However, the Data Warehouse Center supports only Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS, Version 2.1. The Data Warehouse Center uses DataDirect ODBC drivers that do not support Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS, Version 3.1. Therefore, the Data Warehouse Center does not support ODBC warehouse sources and warehouse targets from a Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS, Version 3.1 agent site.

Alternative Unicode conversion tables for the coded character set identifier (CCSID) 5039

The Microsoft Japanese Windows Shift-JIS code page is registered as the IBM coded character set identifier (CCSID) 943. However, the Shift-JIS code page on HP-UX platform is registered as CCSID 5039. CCSID 5039 contains characters in the Japanese Industry Standard (JIS) only, and does not have any vendor defined characters. You can use a DB2 Universal Database (UDB) database of CCSID 5039 on HP-UX to store Shift-JIS characters, but there will be code page conversion between CCSID 5039 and CCSID 943. When using Microsoft ODBC applications, you might encounter a problem when converting data in CCSID 5039 to Unicode, due to differences between IBM's code page conversion table and Microsoft's code page conversion table.

The following list of characters, when converted from CCSID 5039 to Unicode, will result in different code points depending on which conversion table is used (IBM or Microsoft). For these characters, the IBM conversion table conforms to the Japanese Industry Standard JISX0208 and JISX0221.

Table 2. CCSID 5039 to Unicode code point conversion

Shift-JIS code point (character name)	IBM primary code point (Unicode name)	Microsoft primary code point (Unicode name)
X'815C' (EM dash)	U+2014 (EM dash)	U+2015 (Horizontal bar)
X'8160' (Wave dash)	U+301C (Wave dash)	U+FF5E (Fullwidth tilde)
X'8161' (Double vertical line)	U+2016 (Double vertical line)	U+2225 (Parallel to)
X'817C' (Minus sign)	U+2212 (Minus sign)	U+FF0D (Fullwidth hyphen-minus)

For example, the character EM dash with the CCSID 5039 code point of X'815C' is converted to the Unicode code point U+2014 when using the IBM conversion table, but is converted to U+2015 when using the Microsoft conversion table. This can create potential problems for Microsoft ODBC applications because they would treat U+2014 as an invalid code point. To avoid these potential problems, DB2 UDB provides the alternate Microsoft conversion table from CCSID 5039 to Unicode, in

addition to the default IBM conversion table. You need to replace the default IBM conversion table with the alternate Microsoft conversion table. Note that the default IBM conversion table from Unicode to CCSID 5039 matches the Microsoft version.

Replacing the Unicode conversion tables for coded character set (CCSID) 5039 with the Microsoft conversion tables

When you convert from CCSID 5039 to Unicode, the DB2 Universal Database (UDB) default code page conversion table is used. If you want to use a different version of the conversion table, such as the Microsoft version, you must manually replace the default conversion table (.cnv) file.

Prerequisites:

Before replacing the existing code page conversion table file in the `sql11ib/conv` directory, you should back up the file in case you want to change it back. On UNIX and Linux, the `sql11ib/conv` directory is linked to the DB2 UDB installation path.

Restrictions:

For conversion table replacement to be effective, every DB2 UDB client that connects to the same database must have its conversion table changed. Otherwise, the different clients might store the same character using different code points.

Procedure:

To replace the DB2 UDB default conversion table for converting from CCSID 5039 to Unicode, follow these steps:

1. Copy `sql11ib/conv/ms/5039ucs2.cnv` to `sql11ib/conv/5039ucs2.cnv`
2. Restart DB2 UDB.

Alternative Unicode conversion tables for the coded character set identifier (CCSID) 954

The IBM coded character set identifier (CCSID) for the Japanese EUC code page is registered as CCSID 954. CCSID 954 is a common encoding for Japanese UNIX and Linux platforms. When using Microsoft ODBC applications to connect to a DB2 Universal Database (UDB) database of CCSID 954, you might encounter a problem when converting data from CCSID 954 to Unicode. The potential problem is due to differences between IBM's code page conversion table and Microsoft's code page conversion table. The IBM conversion table conforms to the character names as specified in the Japanese Industry Standard (JIS) JISX0208, JISX0212, and JISX0221.

The following characters, when converted from CCSID 954 to Unicode, will result in different code points depending on whether the IBM or Microsoft conversion table is used.

Table 3. CCSID 954 to Unicode code point conversion

EUC-JP code point (character name)	IBM primary code point (Unicode name)	Microsoft primary code point (Unicode name)
X'A1BD' (EM dash)	U+2014 (EM Dash)	U+2015 (Horizontal Bar)
X'A1C1' (Wave dash)	U+301C (Wave Dash)	U+FF5E (Fullwidth Tilde)
X'A1C2' (Double vertical line)	U+2016 (Double vertical line)	U+2225 (Parallel To)

Table 3. CCSID 954 to Unicode code point conversion (continued)

EUC-JP code point (character name)	IBM primary code point (Unicode name)	Microsoft primary code point (Unicode name)
X'A1DD' (Minus sign)	U+2212 (Minus sign)	U+FF0D (Fullwidth hyphen-minus)
X'8FA2C3' (Broken bar)	U+00A6 (Broken bar)	U+FFE4 (Fullwidth broken bar)

For example, the character EM dash with the CCSID 954 code point of X'A1BD' is converted to the Unicode code point U+2014 when using the IBM conversion table, but is converted to U+2015 when using the Microsoft conversion table. Due to this difference of conversion mapping, you might have two different code points for the same character in a DB2 UDB Unicode database, or in a graphic column of a DB2 UDB 954 database. This can create potential problems for Microsoft ODBC applications because they would treat U+2014 as an invalid code point. To avoid these potential problems, DB2 UDB provides the alternate Microsoft conversion table from CCSID 954 to Unicode, in addition to the default IBM conversion table. You need to replace the default IBM conversion table with the alternate Microsoft conversion table. Note that the default IBM conversion table from Unicode to CCSID 954 matches the Microsoft version.

Replacing the Unicode conversion tables for coded character set (CCSID) 954 with the Microsoft conversion tables

When you convert from CCSID 954 to Unicode, the DB2 Universal Database (UDB) default code page conversion table is used. If you want to use a different version of the conversion table, such as the Microsoft version, you must manually replace the default conversion table (.cnv) file.

Prerequisites:

Before replacing the existing code page conversion table file in the `sql1ib/conv` directory, you should back up the file in case you want to change it back. On UNIX and Linux, the `sql1ib/conv` directory is linked to the installation path of DB2 UDB.

Restrictions:

For this to be effective, every DB2 UDB client that connects to the same CCSID 954 database must have its conversion table changed. If your client is Japanese Windows, whose ANSI code page is Shift-JIS (CCSID 943), you will also need to change the DB2 default conversion tables between CCSID 943 and Unicode to the Microsoft version. Otherwise, the different clients might store the same character using different code points.

Procedure:

To replace the DB2 UDB default conversion table for converting from CCSID 954 to Unicode, follow these steps:

1. Copy `sql1ib/conv/ms/0954ucs2.cnv` to `sql1ib/conv/0954ucs2.cnv`
2. Restart DB2 UDB.

To replace the DB2 UDB default conversion tables for converting between CCSID 943 and Unicode, follow these steps:

1. Copy `sql1ib/conv/ms/0943ucs2.cnv` to `sql1ib/conv/0943ucs2.cnv`

2. Copy `sqllib/conv/ms/ucs20943.cnv` to `sqllib/conv/ucs20943.cnv`
3. Restart DB2 UDB.

Alternative Unicode conversion tables for the coded character set identifier (CCSID) 943

When using the Microsoft Japanese Windows Shift-JIS code page that is registered as the IBM coded character set identifier (CCSID) 943, you might encounter the following two problems when converting characters between CCSID 943 and Unicode. The potential problem is due to differences between the IBM and Microsoft code page conversion tables. To avoid these potential problems, DB2 Universal Database (UDB) provides the alternate Microsoft conversion tables between CCSID 943 and Unicode, in addition to the default IBM conversion tables.

Problem 1:

For historical reasons, over 300 characters in the CCSID 943 code page are represented by two or three code points each. The use of input method editors (IMEs) and code page conversion tables cause only one of these equivalent code points to be entered. For example, the lower case character for Roman numeral one 'i' has two equivalent code points: X'EEEEF' and X'FA40'. Microsoft Windows IMEs always generate X'FA40' when 'i' is entered. In general, IBM and Microsoft use the same primary code point to represent the character, except for the following 13 characters:

Table 4. CCSID 943 Shift-JIS code point conversion

Character name (Unicode code point)	IBM primary Shift-JIS code point	Microsoft primary Shift-JIS code point
Roman numeral one (U+2160)	X'FA4A'	X'8754'
Roman numeral two (U+2161)	X'FA4B'	X'8755'
Roman numeral three (U+2162)	X'FA4C'	X'8756'
Roman numeral four (U+2163)	X'FA4D'	X'8757'
Roman numeral five (U+2164)	X'FA4E'	X'8758'
Roman numeral six (U+2165)	X'FA4F'	X'8759'
Roman numeral seven (U+2166)	X'FA50'	X'875A'
Roman numeral eight (U+2167)	X'FA51'	X'875B'
Roman numeral nine (U+2168)	X'FA52'	X'875C'
Roman numeral ten (U+2169)	X'FA53'	X'875D'
Parenthesized ideograph stock (U+3231)	X'FA58'	X'FA58'
Numero sign (U+2116)	X'FA59'	X'8782'
Telephone sign (U+2121)	X'FA5A'	X'8754'

IBM products such as DB2 UDB primarily use IBM code points, such as X'FA4A' to present the upper case Roman numeral one 'I', but Microsoft products use X'8754' to represent the same character. An Microsoft ODBC application can insert the 'I' character as X'8754' into a DB2 UDB database of CCSID 943, and the DB2 UDB Control Center can insert the same character as X'FA4A' into the same CCSID 943 database. However, ODBC applications can find only those rows that have 'I' encoded as X'8754', and DB2 UDB Control Center can locate only those rows that have 'I' encoded as X'FA4A'. To enable DB2 UDB Control Center to select 'I' as X'8754', you need to replace the default IBM conversion tables between CCSID 943 and Unicode with the alternate Microsoft conversion tables.

Problem 2:

The following list of characters, when converted from CCSID 943 to Unicode, will result in different code points depending on whether the IBM conversion table or the Microsoft conversion table is used. For these characters, the IBM conversion table conforms to the Japanese Industry Standard JISX0208, JISX0212, and JISX0221.

Table 5. CCSID 943 to Unicode code point conversion

Shift-JIS code point (character name)	IBM primary code point (Unicode name)	Microsoft primary code point (Unicode name)
X'815C' (EM dash)	U+2014 (EM dash)	U+2015 (Horizontal bar)
X'8160' (Wave dash)	U+301C (Wave dash)	U+FF5E (Fullwidth tilde)
X'8161' (Double vertical line)	U+2016 (Double vertical line)	U+2225 (Parallel to)
X'817C' (Minus sign)	U+2212 (Minus sign)	U+FF0D (Fullwidth hyphen-minus)
X'FA55' (Broken bar)	U+00A6 (Broken bar)	U+FFE4 (Fullwidth broken bar)

For example, the character EM dash with the CCSID 943 code point of X'815C' is converted to the Unicode code point U+2014 when using the IBM conversion table. However, it is converted to U+2015 when using the Microsoft conversion table. Due to this difference of conversion mapping, you might have two different code points for the same character in a DB2 UDB Unicode database. This can create potential problems for Microsoft ODBC applications because they would treat U+2014 as an invalid code point. To avoid this potential problem, you need to replace the default IBM conversion tables between CCSID 943 and Unicode with the alternate Microsoft conversion tables.

The use of the alternate Microsoft conversion tables between CCSID 943 and Unicode should be restricted to closed environments, where the DB2 UDB clients and the DB2 UDB databases all have a code page of CCSID 943 and are all using the same alternate Microsoft conversion tables. If you have a DB2 UDB client using the default IBM conversion tables, and another DB2 UDB client using the alternate Microsoft conversion tables, and both clients are inserting data to the same DB2 UDB database of CCSID 943, the same character may be stored as different code points in the database.

Replacing the Unicode conversion tables for coded character set (CCSID) 943 with the Microsoft conversion tables

When you convert between CCSID 943 and Unicode, the DB2 Universal Database (UDB) default code page conversion tables are used. If you want to use a different version of the conversion tables, such as the Microsoft version, you must manually replace the default conversion table (.cnv) files.

7 **Prerequisites:**
7 Before replacing the existing code page conversion table files in the sql11ib/conv
7 directory, you should back up the files in case you want to change them back. On
7 UNIX and Linux, sql11ib/conv is linked to the DB2 UDB installation path.

7 **Restrictions:**
7 For conversion table replacement to be effective, every DB2 UDB client that
7 connects to the same database must have its conversion table changed. Otherwise
7 the different clients might store the same character using different code points.

7 **Procedure:**
7 To replace the DB2 UDB default conversion tables for converting characters
7 between CCSID 943 and Unicode:
7 1. Copy sql11ib/conv/ms/0943ucs2.cnv to sql11ib/conv/0943ucs2.cnv.
7 2. Copy sql11ib/conv/ms/ucs20943.cnv to sql11ib/conv/ucs20943.cnv.
7 3. Restart DB2 UDB.

MVS operating system is not supported

Despite being mentioned in the documentation, the MVS™ operating system is no longer supported by DB2 Universal Database. MVS has been replaced with z/OS.

Backup and restore operations (Linux 390)

Backup and restore operations to and from multiple tape devices might not work if you are using the Linux 390 operating system.

Enabling view docking when accessing the Development Center with Hummingbird Exceed

2 When accessing the Development Center on UNIX with Hummingbird® Exceed,
2 the XTEST extension version 2.2 must be enabled before you can move and dock
2 views by dragging their title bars within the Development Center.

2 To enable the XTEST extension:

- 2 1. From the Start menu, select **Programs** -> **Hummingbird Connectivity 7.0** ->
2 **Exceed** -> **XConfig**. The XConfig window opens.
- 2 2. Optional: If your configuration requires a password, enter the XConfig
2 password.
- 2 3. Double click the **Protocol** icon. The Protocol window opens.
- 2 4. Select the **X Conformance Test Compatibility** checkbox.
- 2 5. In the **Protocol** window, click the **Extensions...** button. The Protocol Extensions
2 window opens.
- 2 6. In the Enable Extensions list, select the **XTEST(X11R6)** checkbox.
- 2 7. Click **OK**.

Installation, migration, upgrade, and configuration information

Hardware and software requirements

Hardware and software requirements can be viewed at the following Web site:

<http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/udb/sysreqs.html>

Installation notes

On UNIX and Linux platforms, these Installation notes apply to installation of new products only. To apply a FixPak, see the FixPak's Readme.

On Windows platforms, these Installation notes apply to both the installation of new products and the application of FixPaks. If you are applying a FixPak, these Installation notes should be used in conjunction with the FixPak Readme.

Review this entire section before installing DB2 Universal Database.

9 **New options for the DB2 Setup wizard (Windows)**

9 **Specifying the installation path at the command line**

9 The DB2[®] Setup wizard allows the installation path to be specified at the
9 command line using the new option:

9 *-p Installation Directory*

9 This option overrides any value specified in the response file. The new *-p*
9 [INSTALLDIR] option can be used to change the installation path of the product
9 without changing the response file.

9 **New NO_CONFIG option to the installation**

9 The NO_CONFIG keyword, when added to the response file, disables any up and
9 running operations. The installation still sets environment variables and performs
9 other basic setup that is required to create instances and to create the DB2
9 Administration Server manually after the installation has completed. No
9 nonessential configuration is done.

9 If this option is specified in the response file, any keywords that are used during
9 up and running setup are validated, but the configuration associated with these
9 keywords is not done.

9 **Progress display**

9 A new option has been provided to display only the progress window of the DB2
9 Setup wizard when running an unattended installation.

9 The new *-m* option must be used in conjunction with *-u* [response file]
9 parameter. If the *-m* option is specified without the response file option, the
9 installation returns a message indicating that the argument is incorrect. If the *-m*
9 option is specified, only the windows that do not require any user input are
9 displayed.

9 For example, once the setup.exe command is run, the installation displays
9 windows, but it does not prompt for any input. When the installation ends, the
9 windows close and the setup.exe process finishes.

9 **Changes to the DB2 Setup wizard (Windows)**

9 **DB2 Setup wizard options (setup.exe)**

9 The setup.exe file that starts the DB2 installation now waits until the installation
9 exits before returning. This setting is the default behavior. Currently, a -w option
9 exists, however this parameter no longer changes the behavior of the DB2 Setup
9 wizard.

9 You can use the new -c option to force the DB2 Setup wizard to exit immediately
9 after starting the installation. If you select this option, the return code of the
9 installation is not available by monitoring the exit code of the setup.exe file.

9 An error is returned if the -w and -c options are specified together.

9 **Extended security installation restrictions (Windows)**

9 DB2 Universal Database™ (UDB) Version 8.2 introduced a new feature that secures
9 access to DB2 resources by exploiting the security features in the NTFS file system
9 and security features of the Windows® operating system. Secure access is
9 accomplished mainly by modifying the Access Control Lists (ACL) of DB2 files,
9 registry entries and runtime memory objects.

9 By default, the DB2 installation wizard enables this new security feature. Windows
9 extended security can be disabled by performing a custom installation and clearing
9 the **Enhanced Windows security** checkbox in the Enable operating system security
9 for DB2 objects window.

9 The only recommended way to disable the new security feature is by running the
9 **db2secv82** command. However, the **db2secv82** command must be run immediately
9 following installation. More information on the **db2secv82** command can be found
9 in the DB2 Information Center at
9 <http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2help/> for details.

9 You can install DB2 UDB with a user ID, but unless that user ID belongs to one of
9 the DB2ADMNS, DB2USERS, or the Local Administrators groups, that user ID will
9 not be able to run any DB2 commands. Only users who belong to the
9 DB2ADMNS, DB2USERS, or Local Administrators groups have access to the DB2
9 system files, registry keys, network shares, and DB2 services on the local computer
9 where DB2 UDB runs.

9 Generally, users that belong to the DB2ADMNS group, as well as users that belong
9 to the Local Administrators group, have full control of DB2 resources. Users that
9 belong to the DB2USERS group have write and execute access.

9 After installing DB2 UDB Version 8.2, users who need read access (to run queries,
9 for example) must be added to the DB2USERS groups. Users who need full control
9 access, such as database administrators, must be added to the DB2ADMNS groups.

9 User management needs to be done in accordance with the security policies in
9 your environment.

Affects of the new security measures on a typical installation

During a typical installation of DB2 UDB on Windows, extended security is enabled by default. By default, DB2 UDB creates the DB2ADMNS and DB2USERS groups. If there is a conflict with existing group names, you will be prompted to change the group names. If required, you can specify your own values.

If you choose to use an existing security group, the security policies for that group will be modified to satisfy what is required by DB2 UDB. When you choose an existing security group, you might be elevating users' privileges if the users already exist in that group.

Affects of the new security measures on a custom or FixPak installation

During a custom or FixPak installation of DB2 UDB on Windows, the **Enable operating system security for DB2 objects** panel opens. If you want to enable the enhanced Windows security, you can accept the default by clicking Next.

If you want to disable the enhanced Windows security, you can clear the **Enable operating system security** check box in the **Enable operating system security for DB2 objects** window.

Adding user IDs to access DB2 UDB after installation

After a typical or custom installation, you must add your user IDs to the appropriate DB2ADMNS and DB2USERS user groups to give them access to DB2 UDB. To add users to the appropriate group:

1. Start the Users and Passwords Manager tool.
2. Select the user name you want to add from the list.
3. Click **Properties**. In the Properties window, click the Group Membership tab.
4. Select the **Other** radio button.
5. Select the appropriate group from the drop-down list.

Enabling the enhanced Windows security after installation

If you installed DB2 UDB and chose not to enable the new security feature, you can still do so after installation by running the db2secv82.exe command.

Once you enable this security feature using the db2secv82.exe command, you have two options for backing out:

Option 1

Immediately run the db2secv82.exe -r command again without making any additional changes to the system. If there have been any changes at all made to the system you must use option 2.

Option 2

Add the Everyone group to the DB2ADMNS and DB2USERS groups. Adding the Everyone group to these security groups effectively gives all users all privileges to use DB2 UDB.

However, it is not recommended that you disable security because this could result in unwanted security exposures. Disabling security could result in some users being unable to use DB2 UDB because the ACL created by DB2 UDB at runtime no longer matches the ACL that has been applied to the file system.

Directory path cannot contain blanks (Linux and UNIX)

If the db2setup program is run from a directory whose path includes a blank, the setup will fail with the following error:

```
<file>: not found
```

Place the installable image in a directory whose path does not include spaces.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 Requirement

The compat-libstdc++-33 package must be installed prior to installing DB2 Universal Database for Linux™ on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.

JDK levels for DB2 UDB (Linux on IA64 and Linux on POWER)

When you install Version 8.2 of DB2 Universal Database (UDB) on Linux, the RPM-based installation attempts to install the IBM Java RPM (IBMJava2-SDK-ppc-1.4.1-2.0.ppc.rpm).

If a later level of the RPM (such as IBMJava2-SDK-ppc-1.5.0-2.0.ppc.rpm) already exists, the back-level RPM is not installed.

However, in this case, the installation leaves the JDK_PATH database configuration parameter pointing to the Java 1.4 path, /opt/IBMJava2-14/. As a result, none of the Java-dependant functionality, including the installation of the DB2 Tools Catalog, will work.

Prerequisite:

You must run the following command as the instance owner.

Procedure:

1. To point DB2 UDB to the correct IBM® Developer Kit, run the following command:

```
db2 update dbm cfg using JDK_PATH path
```

where *path* is the 1.5 installation path, such as /opt/IBMJava2-15.

Uncompressing installation images (Linux and UNIX)

Some installation images are delivered in compressed or gzipped format on the product CDs. Before you can install DB2 Universal Database (UDB) from these formats, you need to copy the installation image to a temporary directory and uncompress or gunzip the installation image.

The compressed or gzipped installation images on the CD have the file name PRODUCT.tar.Z or PRODUCT.tar.gz, where PRODUCT is the DB2 product you are installing. For example, if you are installing DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition, the compressed image on the relevant CD might be called either ese.tar.Z or ese.tar.gz.

In addition to the software disk requirements, you must have a file system with 2 gigabytes of free space to contain the tar.Z or tar.gz file and the uncompressed installation image.

Procedure:

To uncompress the installation images, perform the following steps:

1. Copy the compressed or gzipped installation image to a temporary file system containing at least 2 gigabytes of free space.
2. Change to the directory where you copied the installation image by entering `cd /TMP`, where `/TMP` represents the directory where you copied the compressed image.
3. If the product has the `*.tar.Z` extension, enter the following command to uncompress the installation image:

```
zcat PRODUCT.tar.Z | tar -xvf -
```

where `PRODUCT` is the DB2 product you are installing.

4. If the product has the `*.tar.gz` extension, enter the following command to uncompress the installation image:

```
gunzip -c PRODUCT.tar.gz | tar -xvf -
```

where `PRODUCT` is the DB2 product you are installing.

Notes:

- a. `gunzip` is part of the AIX 5L™ default installation setup. If you do not have `gunzip`, install the `rpm.rte` file set from the AIX 5L installation media. The `rpm.rte` file set contains `gunzip`.
 - b. You can also download `gzip` for AIX 5L, which includes `gunzip`, from <http://www.ibm.com/servers/aix/products/aixos/linux/rpmgroups.html>.
5. To perform the installation using the DB2 Setup wizard, see the *Installing DB2 UDB from installation images (Linux and UNIX)* section.

DB2 UDB does not allow non-English installation path (Windows)

During DB2 Universal Database (UDB) installation on Windows, you can enter the directory path for DB2 UDB. However, the directory path name you enter can contain only English characters.

Downloading and uncompressing FixPaks for multiple products (Windows)

Starting with DB2 Version 8 for Windows Fixpak 3, IBM is providing product-specific FixPaks instead of one general FixPak. This change affects only DB2 Version 8 products on Windows platforms.

If you have more than one DB2 product installed then you will be required to download and uncompress an image for each DB2 product before installing.

For example, if you have DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition Version 8 and DB2 Spatial Extender Version 8 installed on the same Windows system, you must download the DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition FixPak image and the Spatial Extender FixPak image. You must then uncompress each of these FixPak images to the same directory. All images must be uncompressed for the GUI installation or silent installation to proceed.

For complete FixPak installation instructions, see the latest DB2 UDB FixPak Readme.

Installing DB2 UDB from installation images (Linux and UNIX)

Prerequisites:

Before you start the DB2 Setup wizard:

- Ensure your system meets installation, memory, and disk requirements. See the *Hardware and software requirements* section.

Note: DB2 UDB Version 8.2.2 introduces a new set of installation images for Linux distributions on x86 (32-bit Intel® and AMD) and x86-64 (64-bit Intel EM64T and AMD64) architectures based on the 2.6 kernel, such as Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 and SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 9. Ensure that you have acquired the appropriate set of installation images for your Linux distribution before proceeding with the installation.

- Ensure you have read the Installation Prerequisites. The file `install.txt` or `install.htm` is located on the CD at: `/cdrom/doc/language/` where:
 - `cdrom` refers to the mount point
 - `language` refers to the language directory consisting of a five-character code.
- You require root authority to perform the installation.
- The DB2 product CD must be mounted on your system.

Procedure:

If the installation images are delivered in compressed or gzipped format on the product CDs, you must uncompress or gunzip the installation image before you can install DB2 UDB. See the *Uncompressing installation images (Linux and UNIX)* section for details.

To perform the installation using the DB2 Setup wizard, enter the following command:

```
./PRODUCT/db2setup
```

where `PRODUCT` is the DB2 product you are installing. For example, if you are installing DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition, enter `./ese/db2setup`.

The installation Launchpad opens. Proceed through the installation panels.

Installing DB2 UDB from installation images (Windows)

Prerequisites:

Before you start the DB2 Setup wizard:

- Ensure your system meets installation, memory, and disk requirements. See the *Hardware and software requirements* section.
- Ensure you have read the Installation Prerequisites. The file `install.txt` or `install.htm` is located on the CD at: `x:\doc\language\` where:
 - `x` represents the CD drive
 - `language` refers to the language directory consisting of a five-character code.
- You must have a local Administrator user account with the recommended user rights to perform the installation.

To perform the installation using the DB2 Setup wizard, insert the CD into the drive. If enabled, the auto-run feature automatically starts the DB2 Setup launchpad.

Procedure:

If the auto-run feature is not enabled, you can start the DB2 Setup wizard manually:

1. Click **Start** and select the **Run** option.
2. In the **Open** field, enter the following command:
`x:\setup /i language`

where:

- *x*: represents the CD drive
- *language* is the territory identifier for your language (for example, EN for English).

The */i language* parameter is optional. If it is not specified, the DB2 Setup wizard runs in the same language as your operating system.

3. Click **OK**. The DB2 Setup launchpad opens.

Proceed through the installation panels.

Note: The DB2 Run-Time Client Lite product uses other command line parameters. Visit the DB2 Information Center at <http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/db2help/> for details.

Disk space required for a DB2 UDB response file installation

When you install a DB2 Universal Database product using a response file, 1 MB of free disk space is required in the etc directory.

If you receive error message DBI1191I during a response file installation, the message indicates there is not enough free disk space in the root directory. This message is misleading. Check the amount of free disk space in the etc directory. A minimum of 1 MB of free disk space is required before re-running the installation.

Restrictions to adding products using the db2setup command (Linux and UNIX)

Once a DB2 product has been installed, additional DB2 products can be added. If you use the **db2setup** command to add products the following recommendations and restrictions apply.

Recommendations:

Both the installed product and the product being added should be at the same code level. For example, DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Enterprise Server Edition Server Version 8 FixPak 5 is already installed and you want to add the DB2 Information Integrator product. In this case, DB2 Information Integrator should also be at the Version 8 FixPak 5 level.

Restrictions:

- If the DB2 fixpak level is higher than the fixpak level of the product being added, the combination is allowed. However, since the fixpak level of the

- 6 product being added is lower than the DB2 fixpak level, the DB2 fixpak level
 6 must be reapplied after installing the additional product. See the appropriate
 6 FixPak Readme for instructions to reapply the fixpak.
- 6 • If the DB2 fixpak level is lower than the fixpak level of the product being added,
 6 an error is generated. The product being added cannot be at a higher fixpak
 6 level than DB2 UDB. In this case, you must first bring DB2 UDB to the
 6 appropriate level, then install the additional product. See the appropriate FixPak
 6 Readme for instructions.

6 The following table summarizes the db2setup combinations:

6 *Table 6. db2setup combinations*

6 DB2 fixpak 6 level	6 Additional 6 product fixpak 6 level	6 Is this combination permitted?
6 Version 8 6 FixPak 3	6 Version 8 FixPak 3	6 Yes. This is recommended.
6 Version 8 6 FixPak 3	6 Version 8 GA	6 Yes, but Version 8 FixPak 3 must be reapplied. See the 6 appropriate FixPak Readme for instructions to reapply 6 the fixpak by going to the DB2 Support Web site.
6 Version 8 6 FixPak 3	6 Version 8 FixPak 5	6 No. DB2 must first be brought to the higher fix pack 6 level (in this example, Version 8 FixPak 5) before 6 installing the additional product. See the appropriate 6 FixPak Readme for instructions to install the required 6 Version 8 FixPak by going to the DB2 Support Web site.

6 The DB2 Support Web site address is
 6 <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/udb/support.html>

6 DB2 Web Tools

The application servers supported by DB2 Web Tools for the following languages are required to be compliant with the Servlet 2.3 specification:

- 6 • Japanese
- 6 • Korean
- 6 • Simplified Chinese
- 6 • Traditional Chinese
- 6 • Russian
- 6 • Polish

6 Binding Query Patroller packages after applying fixpaks

6 If you have Query Patroller installed, after applying a fixpak and performing all
 6 post-fixpak installation tasks, perform the following steps:

- 6 1. Log in as a user with DBADM authority.
- 6 2. Change to the proper directory:
 - 6 • INSPATH/bnd (Linux and UNIX)
 - 6 • INSPATH\bnd (Windows)

6 where INSPATH is the DB2 UDB instance path.
- 6 3. Run the following commands:


```
6 db2 connect to dbname
6 db2 bind @qpserver.lst blocking all grant public
```

Query Patroller installation at FixPak 3 level or later

Query Patroller is a query management system used to control the flow of queries against your DB2 UDB database. In DB2 UDB Version 8.1.2, DB2 Query Patroller became a stand-alone product. It is no longer a component of the DB2 Warehouse Manager.

If you have DB2 UDB Version 8 FixPak 3 or later installed and you install the DB2 Query Patroller base or GA version, you must reapply DB2 UDB FixPak 3 or later. Otherwise, the Query Patroller changes are not applied to the DB2 UDB FixPak level you are at.

If you are installing the Query Patroller server, you must also update the DB2 UDB instances after reapplying the DB2 UDB FixPak level. The instances must be restarted after they are updated.

Query Patroller server installation

When you are installing Query Patroller server note the following:

- If you select **Computer usage based** from the **Select the installation type** window using the DB2 Setup wizard, and you select **Server** from the **Select how this computer will be used** window, the Query Patroller Center will not be installed. If you want to install the Query Patroller Center, select either the **Complete** or the **Custom** installation types from the **Select the installation type** window.
- The *DB2 Query Patroller Guide* uses installation panels from the Computer usage based installation type to illustrate how to install Query Patroller server using the DB2 Setup wizard. You do not have to use the Computer usage based installation type to install Query Patroller server. You can use either the Complete or the Custom installation types to install Query Patroller server.
- DB2 Clients which have Query Patroller Client Tools installed must connect to a partition that has the Query Patroller server installed. In a typical partitioned database environment, the Query Patroller server is installed on all partitions, so you can choose any partition to be the coordinator partition and still be able to use the Query Patroller client tools.

Defining a new database partition group in Query Patroller

When you define a new table space during Query Patroller installation in a partitioned environment, you can select an existing database partition group. Alternatively, you can set up a new database partition group for the new table space. If you choose to set up a new database partition group, you can select only one database partition from the list box on the install panel for that new database partition group. If you want to add additional partitions into the new database partition group, you must add them manually after the installation is complete.

Query Patroller client tools installation

DB2 clients do not require the Query Patroller client tools to be installed on them in order to submit queries to the Query Patroller server.

Recreating beta versions of databases

If you created databases in a beta version of DB2 UDB Version 8.2, you must recreate them in the official version of Version 8.2.

This includes recreation of spatial databases for of DB2 Geodetic Extender Version 8.2.

Installing MDAC files for national language versions of DB2 UDB

If you do not install the national language version of Microsoft Data Access Components (MDAC) 2.7 prior to installing the national language version of DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8.2, DB2 UDB installs English MDAC files by default. This installation causes the Windows ODBC Data Source Administrator panels to appear untranslated if your operating system is in a language other than English. To fix this problem, install the “MDAC 2.7 RTM - Refresh” bundle from the Microsoft Web site at <http://msdn.microsoft.com/data/downloads/updates/default.aspx>.

Choose the language that you want to install, download the required executable file, and run it. This procedure installs the translated ODBC Data Source Administrator files.

DB2 license policy for DB2 Universal Database Workgroup Server Edition

The Internet license policy is not valid for DB2 Universal Database Workgroup Server Edition. If you require a license for Internet users, you need to purchase DB2 Universal Database Workgroup Server Unlimited Edition.

Installing additional Asian fonts (Linux)

IBM offers additional font packages for Linux that contain additional double-byte character set (DBCS) support for Asian characters. These font packages are necessary with some versions of Linux that install only the fonts required to display the country-specific or region-specific characters.

If you run the **db2setup** command and find missing characters in the DB2 setup wizard interface, it is likely that your Linux system does not have all the necessary fonts installed. To enable the **db2setup** command to properly refer to the fonts embedded in the installation CD, perform the following task:

1. Enter the following command:

```
export JAVA_FONTS=/<cdrom>/db2/<linux_platform>/java/jre/lib/fonts
```

where <cdrom> is the location of the installation image and <linux_platform> is a directory name with a *Linux* prefix.

2. Re-run the **db2setup** command.

If you notice missing characters when using the DB2 GUI tools after installation, install the necessary fonts provided with the DB2 product. These fonts can be found in the fonts directory on any of the following CDs:

- *IBM Developer Kit, Java Technology Edition (64-bit) for AIX 5L*
- *DB2 Embedded Application Server and applications (XML registry, Web Administration tools and Java distributed debugger) for your operating system*

In the fonts directory, there are two typefaces available: Times New Roman WorldType and Monotype Sans Duospace WorldType. For each typeface, there is a country-specific or region-specific font. The following table lists the eight fonts provided in compressed format in the fonts directory.

Table 7. File names for additional Asian fonts

Font typeface	Font file name	Country or Region
Times New Roman WT J	tnrwt_j.zip	Japan and other countries or regions
Times New Roman WT K	tnrwt_k.zip	Korea
Times New Roman WT SC	tnrwt_s.zip	China (Simplified Chinese)
Times New Roman WT TC	tnrwt_t.zip	Taiwan (Traditional Chinese)
Monotype Sans Duospace WT J	mtsansdj.zip	Japan and other countries or regions
Monotype Sans Duospace WT K	mtsansdk.zip	Korea
Monotype Sans Duospace WT SC	mtsansds.zip	China (Simplified Chinese)
Monotype Sans Duospace WT TC	mtsansdt.zip	Taiwan (Traditional Chinese)

Note: These fonts do not replace the system fonts. These fonts are to be used in conjunction with or for use with DB2 Universal Database. You cannot engage in the general or unrestricted sale or distribution of these fonts.

Procedure:

To install an additional Asian font:

1. Unzip the font package.
2. Copy the font package to the /opt/IBMJava2-141/jre/lib/fonts directory. You need to create the directory if it does not already exist.
3. Enter the following command:

```
export JAVA_FONTS=/opt/IBMJava2-141/jre/lib/fonts
```

As a minimum, you need to install one font of each typeface for your country or region. If you are in China, Korea, or Taiwan, use the country-specific or region-specific versions; otherwise, use the Japanese version of the fonts. If you have space on your system, install all eight fonts.

Configuring the Development Center to use Java Development Kits (Linux)

In some cases, DB2 Universal Database does not install a Java Development Kit on the client operating system. To use the Development Center to develop Java stored procedures on these clients, you must point the Development Center to the location of an installed Java Development Kit .

Follow these steps to identify the location of a Java Development Kit:

1. In Development Center, select the **Project** -> **Environment Settings** menu item.
2. In the Environment Settings notebook, select the **Process** node.
3. In the **Java Home** section of the Process page, select the **JDK level** that will be used to build and run Java stored procedures.
4. In the **Directory** field, specify a directory path that exists or is accessible on the client where the selected JDK is installed.

7 5. If the client computer is used to develop Java stored procedures on multiple
7 DB2 servers, you might need to select additional JDK levels and specify their
7 installed locations, depending on which JDK levels are used by these servers.

7 On the DB2 server, the Java Development Kit installation might not have linked
7 some Java libraries into the system /usr/lib subdirectory. These links are needed
7 to build and run Java stored procedures.

9 The section titled "Setting up the Linux Java Environment" in the Compatibility
9 Issues section of these Release Notes shows how to create the links to a Java
9 Development Kit on a Linux client.

7 **Creating group and user IDs on United Linux 1.0 and SuSE 7 Linux distributions**

7 To create group and user IDs for a DB2 UDB Version 8.2 installation on United
7 Linux 1.0 and SuSE Linux distributions, use the groupadd and useradd commands,
7 respectively. The Version 8.2 *Installation and Configuration Supplement* incorrectly
7 documents the mkgroup and mkuser commands to create group and user IDs,
7 respectively.

7 **Help system daemon does not start after installing with the 7 db2_install command (UNIX and Linux)**

7 If you are installing the DB2 Information Center on UNIX and Linux platforms
7 using the db2_install command, the help system daemon (db2icd) does not start
7 following the installation. You need to manually start the help system daemon or
7 restart your computer to access the documentation.

7 See the topic titled "DB2 Information Center daemon" in the **Documentation**
7 **updates | Installation and configuration** section of the *Release Notes*.

7 **Ready for Tivoli enablement (UNIX)**

When you purchase an IBM software product that carries the Ready for Tivoli®
logo, you can manage your IBM software products through various Tivoli
offerings. The Tivoli products allow you to automatically discover, monitor, and
inventory one or more Ready for Tivoli applications.

IBM software products that are Ready for Tivoli can be managed through products
such as IBM Tivoli Configuration Manager. IBM Tivoli Monitoring for Databases
provides support for all leading databases including DB2 Universal Database
(UDB), Oracle, and Informix®.

For additional information, point your browser to the IBM Web site at
<http://www.ibm.com/software/tivoli/>

Ready for Tivoli Instrumentation and DB2 UDB Version 8:

To install and configure your instrumentation, have your Tivoli administrator do
the following:

1. The Tivoli Ready signature file for this DB2 product is named xxx.sys. As of
FixPak 4 these signature files will be refreshed per FixPak instead of per
version release. Confirm the signature files are installed in the directory:

```
%install DB2DIR%/tivready
```
2. Install and configure Tivoli GEM 2.2 Tivoli Ready enablement on all the
computers that you intend to monitor. To download Tivoli Ready enablement

and detailed installation and use instructions, point your browser to <http://www.ibm.com/software/sysmgmt/products/support/>

- Advanced database manageability is achieved through IBM Tivoli Monitoring for Databases. The ITM for Databases product uses the new advanced edition Distributed Monitoring product (called IBM Tivoli Monitoring or ITM) and provides significant enhancement in monitoring capability based on the use of this new monitoring engine. ITM for Databases provides DB2 UDB support through a Proactive Analysis Component (PAC). This PAC is tightly integrated with DB2 UDB and provides an out-of-the-box set of monitors for quick deployment and activation. Custom monitors, thresholds, and tasks can also be defined by the DBA.

Additional information available at: <http://www.ibm.com/software/tivoli/>

Information on other Tivoli products is available at:
<http://www.ibm.com/software/tivoli/>

Installation image reduction tool – db2iprune (Windows)

The db2iprune command line utility can reduce the size of your DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Windows product installation image. The tool is particularly useful for large scale deployments of DB2 UDB. The tool is also useful for embedding DB2 UDB within an application.

The db2iprune tool consists of an input file and an executable file. The input file (.prn), contains a full list of removable components and is used to indicate which features and languages you would like to remove from the installation image. The db2iprune executable file (db2iprune.exe) then removes the cabinet files associated with those features and languages. The result is a new, smaller DB2 UDB image that can be installed using the regular installation methods. Fixpaks are also applied using the regular methods. When the fixpak is installed it detects and updates only the components that were installed using db2iprune.

The db2iprune tool is located in the \db2\windows\utilities\db2iprune directory on your DB2 UDB product installation CD. This directory also contains a Readme file. Refer to the db2iprune Readme for detailed instructions on how to use db2iprune.

DB2 Universal Database, Version 8 documentation installation restriction (Windows)

On Windows, do not install the DB2 Universal Database (UDB), Version 8 Information Center (HTML documentation) on a workstation or server where a DB2 UDB, Version 7 (or earlier) product is already installed. The installer detects the earlier version and removes the earlier product.

Previous installations updated to the latest level (Windows)

If you have a DB2 product that is installed at an earlier Version 8 level, the installation image detects this and updates the product to the latest level.

System requirements for the DB2 .NET Data Provider (Windows)

Before using the DB2 Universal Database (UDB) installation program to install the DB2 .NET Data Provider, you must have the .NET Framework already installed on the computer. If the .NET Framework is not installed, the DB2 UDB installation program will not register the DB2 .NET Data Provider.

3 If DB2 UDB is installed and the .NET Framework is not installed, the DB2 .NET
3 Data Provider is not registered. If the .NET Framework is installed at a later date,
3 you can run the db2nmpreg executable to register the provider. This executable
3 resides in the sqllib\bin directory. There are no parameters.

3 To register DB2 .NET Data Provider, enter db2nmpreg from any command
3 window.

Installing DB2 Version 8 Clients and DB2 Connect PE as a non-Administrator (Windows)

When installing a DB2 Administration client, DB2 Application Development client, or DB2 Connect Personal Edition, you must update your Windows TCP/IP services file if the following conditions apply:

- The data warehousing feature is selected in the installation setup
- The user ID performing the installation is not a member of the Administrators group on the target computer
- The product is being installed on any one of the following operating systems: Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003.

If all of the these conditions apply, the following entries need to be added to the Windows TCP/IP services file:

Table 8. Entries required in Windows TCP/IP services file

Port name	Port number
vwkernel	11000/tcp
vwd	11001/tcp
vwlogger	11002/tcp

Without these entries, the Data Warehouse Center will not function properly.

Migration notes

Migrating DB2 Universal Database (Windows)

The following steps show the correct order for the migration prerequisites for DB2 Universal Database (UDB) on Windows.

Prerequisites:

Before migrating:

1. Review the migration recommendations, restrictions, and space recommendations.
2. Record configuration settings before DB2 UDB migration.
3. Change the diagnostic error level.
4. Verify that databases are ready for DB2 UDB migration.
5. Back up your databases.
6. If you are using replication, you must archive all of the DB2 UDB log files.
7. You must have SYSADM authority.
8. Take the DB2 server offline for DB2 UDB migration.

8 **Note:** As of Version 8.1 the DB2_HASH_JOIN registry variable will be ON by
8 default. See the "Administration: Performance" subsection in the
8 "Documentation updates" section for details.

1 **Migrating DB2 Universal Database when using DataJoiner or** 1 **replication**

1 If you want to migrate an instance of DataJoiner® or DB2 Universal Database
1 (UDB) for Linux, UNIX, and Windows on which you are running the Capture or
1 Apply programs for DB2 UDB replication, you must prepare to migrate your
1 replication environment before you migrate the DB2 UDB or DataJoiner instance.
1 Detailed instructions for carrying out the required preparation are included in the
1 migration documentation for DB2 DataPropagator™, Version 8. You can find
1 migration documentation for DB2 DataPropagator, Version 8 at
1 <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/dpropr/>.

5 **Migrating a DB2 Version 8 Windows 32-bit database to** 5 **Windows 64-bit**

5 This topic lists the steps for migrating your 32-bit DB2 Version 8 database on a
5 32-bit computer to a 64-bit database on a 64-bit Windows operating system.

5 **Prerequisites:**

- 5 • A 64-bit version of DB2 Version 8 must be installed on your 64-bit computer.
- 5 • Ensure that your 32-bit Windows system is running DB2 Version 8.

5 **Procedure:**

5 To migrate to DB2 Version 8 on Windows 64-bit:

- 5 1. Backup your DB2 Version 8 databases on your 32-bit Windows system.
- 5 2. Restore your DB2 Version 8 backup (created in step #1) on your 64-bit
5 Windows system.

5 **Note:** In addition to migrating DB2 UDB from 32-bit systems to 64-bit systems, the
5 following migrations are also possible:

- 5 • Migrating between versions of Windows
- 5 • Migrating between versions of DB2 UDB
- 5 • Migrating everything at once
- 5 • Migrating back to 32-bit

5 Detailed information is available in the following IBM Redbook: Scaling DB2
5 UDB on Windows Server 2003. This Redbook can be found at the following
5 URL:

5 [http://publib-](http://publib-b.boulder.ibm.com/Redbooks.nsf/RedbookAbstracts/sg247019.html)
5 [b.boulder.ibm.com/Redbooks.nsf/RedbookAbstracts/sg247019.html](http://publib-b.boulder.ibm.com/Redbooks.nsf/RedbookAbstracts/sg247019.html)

9 **Migration of EXPLAIN tables**

9 In order to create the EXPLAIN tables, the **db2updv8** command must be run when
9 applying DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1
9 Fixpak 9) or higher to a DB2 UDB Version 8.2 FixPak 1 (equivalent to Version 8.1
9 Fixpak 8) or lower.

9 Running the **db2updv8** command creates the EXPLAIN_GET_MSG function, which
9 allows EXPLAIN.DDL to be run again.

9 If you attempt to create the explain tables using the EXPLAIN.DDL without
9 running the **db2updv8** command, you might receive the following error message:

```
9 DB21034E  
9 The command was processed as an SQL statement because it  
9 was not a valid Command Line Processor command.  
9 During SQL processing it returned:  
9  
9 SQL0440N No authorized routine named "EXPLAIN_GET_MSG" of  
9 type "FUNCTION" having compatible arguments was found.  
9 LINE NUMBER=26. SQLSTATE=42884
```

9 **Migrating to DB2 UDB Version 8.2.2 from Version 7 in an** 9 **MSCS environment**

9 This topic describes how to migrate from DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 7
9 to DB2 UDB Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9) in a Microsoft
9 Cluster Server (MSCS) environment.

9 **Assumptions:** A sample configuration will be used to illustrate how to migrate to
9 DB2 UDB Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9) in an MSCS
9 environment. In this sample configuration, there are two Windows Server 2000
9 computers with DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition Version 7. The initial
9 configuration is a DB2 instance that is comprised of two partitions. In addition,
9 there are two Cluster Groups:

- 9 • DB2 Group 0: contains Partition 0 active on computer A. The Administration
9 Server (DAS) is also located here.
- 9 • DB2 Group 1: contains Partition 1 active on computer B.

9 **Prerequisite:**

9 Before beginning the migration, back up the database.

9 **Procedure:**

9 To migrate from DB2 UDB Version 7 to Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1
9 FixPak 9) in an MSCS environment:

- 9 1. Set automatic failback to off.

9 During the installation process you might have to restart your computer.
9 When this happens the cluster service restarts automatically. Therefore the
9 automatic failback must be set to off so none of the groups automatically
9 failback.

- 9 a. In DB2 Group 0, to disable automatic failback:

- 9 1) From the Cluster Administrator window, right-click **DB2 Group 0**.
- 9 2) Select **Properties**. The DB2 Group 0 Properties window opens.
- 9 3) On the **Failback** tab, select the **Prevent failback** radio button.
- 9 4) Click **OK**.

- 9 b. In DB2 Group 1, to disable automatic failback:

- 9 1) From the Cluster Administrator window, right-click **DB2 Group 1**.
- 9 2) Select **Properties**. The DB2 Group 1 Properties window opens.
- 9 3) On the **Failback** tab, select the **Prevent failback** radio button.
- 9 4) Click **OK**.

- 9 2. Move DB2 Group 1 to computer A.
 - 9 a. From the Cluster Administrator GUI, click on **DB2 Group 1**.
 - 9 b. Right-click, select **Move Group**. The Owner column changes to computer
9 A.
- 9 3. Stop the cluster service on computer B.
 - 9 a. From the Component Services window, right-click **Cluster Service**.
 - 9 b. Click **Stop**.
- 9 4. Download and install DB2 UDB Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak
9 9) on computer B.

9 **Note:**

- 9 • DB2 UDB is still running and available on computer A.
 - 9 • As part of the installation process , you will be prompted to run the
9 **db2imigr** command to migrate the DB2 instances on this computer.
9 While running **db2imigr**, you might have to restart your computer.
- 9 5. Take the DB2 resources on computer A offline.
 - 9 a. Partition 0, Partition 1, and the DAS are all resources on computer A.
9 These must be taken offline one at a time. To take computer A resources
9 offline:
 - 9 1) From the Cluster Administrator window, in the left window panel,
9 select **Groups**.
 - 9 2) Select **DB2 Group 0**. The resources for the group display in the right
9 window panel.
 - 9 • For DB2 Group 0 the DB2 resources include Partition 0 and the DAS.
 - 9 3) In the right window panel, right-click one of the resources, select **Take
9 Offline**.
 - 9 • Repeat this step for each of the DB2 resources in DB2 Group 0.
 - 9 4) Select **DB2 Group 1**. The resources for the group display in the right
9 window panel.
 - 9 • For DB2 Group 1 the DB2 resources include Partition 1.
 - 9 5) In the right window panel, right-click the resource (Partition 1), select
9 **Take Offline**.
 - 9 6. Start the cluster service on computer B.

9 If the installation required a restart of your computer, and, if the **Restart Type**
9 for the cluster service is set to automatic, skip this step because the cluster
9 service is already started.

9 To start the cluster service:

 - 9 a. From the Component Services window, right-click **Cluster Service**.
 - 9 b. Click **Start**.
 - 9 7. Move DB2 Group 0 and DB2 Group 1 to computer B.
 - 9 a. From the Cluster Administrator window, click **DB2 Group 0**.
 - 9 b. Right-click, select **Move Group**. The Owner column changes to computer
9 B.
 - 9 c. Click on **DB2 Group 1**.
 - 9 d. Right-click, select **Move Group**. The Owner column changes to computer
9 B.
 - 9 8. Bring the DB2 resources on computer B online.

- 9 a. Partition 0, Partition 1, and the DAS are now resources on computer B.
9 These must be brought back online one at a time. To bring these resources
9 online:
 - 9 1) From the Cluster Administrator window, in the left window panel,
9 select **Groups**.
 - 9 2) Select **DB2 Group 0**. The resources for the group display in the right
9 window panel.
 - 9 • For DB2 Group 0 the DB2 resources include Partition 0 and the DAS.
 - 9 3) In the right window panel, right-click one of the resources, select **Bring
9 Online**.
 - 9 • Repeat this step for each of the DB2 resources in DB2 Group 0.
 - 9 4) Select **DB2 Group 1**. The resources for the group display in the right
9 window panel.
 - 9 • For DB2 Group 1 the DB2 resources include Partition 1.
 - 9 5) In the right window panel, right-click the resource (Partition 1), select
9 **Bring Online**.
- 9 b. Migrate all DB2 instances and all DB2 databases.
 - 9 1) Migrate all DB2 instances using the **db2imigr** command:
 - 9 a) To find all DB2 instances, run the **db2ilist** command.
 - 9 b) To migrate each DB2 instance, run the **db2imigr** command. This
9 command is located under the `sql11ib\bin` directory and must be
9 run for each DB2 instance.
 - 9 2) Migrate all DB2 databases using the **migrate database** command.
- 9 9. Stop the cluster service on computer A.
 - 9 a. From the Component Services window, right-click **Cluster Service**.
 - 9 b. Click **Stop**.
- 9 10. Download and install DB2 UDB Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak
9 9) on computer A.

9 **Note:**

 - 9 • DB2 is still running and available on computer A.
 - 9 • As part of the installation process, you might have to restart your
9 computer.
 - 9 • You do not need to run the **db2imigr** and **migrate database**
9 commands on computer A because you have already run these
9 commands on computer B.
- 9 11. Start the cluster service on computer A.
9 If the installation required a restart of your computer, and, if the **Restart Type**
9 is set to automatic, skip this step because the cluster service is already started.
9 To start the cluster service:
 - 9 a. From the Component Services window, right-click **Cluster Service**.
 - 9 b. Click **Start**.
- 9 12. Move DB2 Group 0 to computer A.
 - 9 a. From the Cluster Administrator window, click **DB2 Group 0**.
 - 9 b. Right-click, select **Move Group**. The Owner column changes to computer
9 A.

9 This action brings the MSCS environment back to the initial configuration.
- 9 13. If automatic failback was turned off in Step 1, you must turn it on.

- a. In DB2 Group 0, to enable automatic failback:
 - 1) From the Cluster Administrator GUI, right-click **DB2 Group 0**.
 - 2) Select **Properties**. The DB2 Group 0 Properties window opens.
 - 3) On the **Failback** tab, select the **Allow failback** radio button.
 - 4) Click **OK**.
- b. In DB2 Group 1, to enable automatic failback:
 - 1) From the Cluster Administrator window, right-click **DB2 Group 1**.
 - 2) Select **Properties**. The DB2 Group 1 Properties window opens.
 - 3) On the **Failback** tab, select the **Allow failback** radio button.
 - 4) Click **OK**.

Migrating XML Extender from previous versions

If you are using an earlier version of DB2 XML Extender, you must migrate each database that is enabled for XML Extender before you use an existing XML-enabled database with the updated XML Extender release. Each new fix pack contains all of the previous fix packs' updates.

Before running the migration program, create a backup of the database.

To migrate an XML enabled database and XML enabled columns, complete the following steps.

1. From the DB2 Command Line, enter:

```
db2 connect to database_name
db2 bind dxxinstall/bnd/@dxxMigv.lst
db2 bind dxxinstall/bnd/@dxxbind.lst
```

where *dxxinstall* is the directory path in which you installed DB2 Universal Database.

2. From the DB2 Command Line, enter:

```
dxxMigv database_name
```

Database migration (HP-UX on IA64)

Database migration is not supported for DB2 Universal Database (UDB) for HP-UX on IA64 throughout the Version 8.x releases.

Restoring a Version 7 DB2 backup image to a Version 8 instance is not supported on DB2 UDB for HP-UX on IA64.

Uninstallation information

Uninstalling DB2 UDB silently (Windows)

To remove DB2 products silently using the **msiexec** command:

```
msiexec /x <product_code> /qn
```

where <product code> represents the code for the product you want to remove.

Here is a list of the DB2 product codes:

DB2 Universal Database Enterprise Server Edition (ESE)
{D8F53726-C7AD-11D4-9155-00203586D551}

7 **DB2 Universal Database Workgroup Server Edition (WSE)**
7 {7A28F948-4945-4BD1-ACC2-ADC081C24830}

7 **DB2 Universal Database Express Edition (EXP)**
7 {58169F10-CA30-4F40-8C6D-C6DA8CE47E16}

7 **DB2 Universal Database Personal Edition (PE)**
7 {C0AA883A-72AE-495F-9601-49F2EB154E93}

7 **DB2 Warehouse Manager (WM)**
7 {84AF5B86-19F9-4396-8D99-11CD91E81724}

7 **DB2 Data Links Manager (DLM)**
7 {1D16CA65-F7D9-47E5-BB26-C623A44832A3}

7 **Relational Connect (RCON)**
7 {273F8AB8-C84B-4EE6-85E7-D7C5270A6D08}

7 **DB2 Connect Enterprise Edition (CEE)**
7 {9C8DFB63-66DE-4299-AC6B-37D799A728A2}

7 **DB2 Connect Personal Edition (CPE)**
7 {F1912044-6E08-431E-9B6D-90ED10C0B739}

7 **DB2 Administration Client (ADMCL)**
7 {ABD23811-AA8F-416B-9EF6-E54D62F21A49}

7 **DB2 Application Development Client (ADCL)**
7 {68A40485-7F7F-4A91-9AB6-D67836E15CF2}

7 **DB2 Run-Time Client (RTCL)**
7 {63F6DCD6-0D5C-4A07-B27C-3AE3E809D6E0}

7 **DB2 7 (RTLITE)**
7 {07C9CEE7-4529-4E60-95D3-6B6EF6AC0E81}

7 **DB2 Eclipse Documentation (DOCE)**
7 {FE2D4758-041C-4E4E-95B3-529E4E1EAF3E}

7 **DB2 Query Patroller (QP)**
7 {7A8BE511-8DF3-4F22-B61A-AF0B8755E354}

7 **Life Sciences Data Connect (LSDC)**
7 {DD30AEB3-4323-40D7-AB39-735A0523DEF3}

7 **DB2 Cube Views (CUBE)**
7 {C8FEDF8F-84E8-442F-A084-0A0F6A772B52}

7 **DB2 Spatial Extender (SE)**
7 {F6846BF9-F4B5-4BB2-946D-3926795D5749}

7 **Example:**

7 If you want to remove DB2 UDB Enterprise Edition, enter the following command
7 `msiexec /x {D8F53726-C7AD-11D4-9155-00203586D551} /qn`

7 The following DB2 product codes are no longer supported in DB2 UDB Version
7 8.2:

- 7 • WMC {5FEA5040-22E2-4760-A88C-73DE82BE4B6E}
- 7 • DOC {73D99978-A255-4150-B4FD-194ECF4B3D7C}

7
7
7
7
7
7

Product code for DB2 Information Center removal using a silent uninstall (Windows)

When removing the DB2 Information Center using a silent uninstall on Windows, use the following product code:

{FE2D4758-041C-4E4E-95B3-529E4E1EAF3E}

Known limitations, problems, and workarounds

The following information is the currently known limitations, problems, and workarounds for DB2 Universal Database Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9). The information in this section applies only to the Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9) release of DB2 Universal Database, and its supporting products. Any limitations and restrictions might or might not apply to other releases of the product.

Limitations

9 **SNAP_GET_DB table function returns incomplete results**

9 When invoked in a database partitioning feature (DPF) environment with -2
9 (global snapshot) provided as input, the SNAP_GET_DB table function returns
9 incomplete results for the following four columns:

- 9 • FIRST_ACTIVE_LOG
- 9 • LAST_ACTIVE_LOG
- 9 • CURRENT_ACTIVE_LOG
- 9 • CURRENT_ARCHIVE_LOG

9 These elements cannot be aggregated for a global snapshot. To retrieve the
9 complete set of values for these snapshot elements, the SNAP_GET_DB table
9 function should be called individually on each partition.

7 **IMPORT REPLACE does not honor the Not Logged Initially 7 clause**

7 The IMPORT command's REPLACE option does not honor the CREATE TABLE
7 statement's NOT LOGGED INITIALLY (NLI) clause or the ALTER TABLE
7 statement's ACTIVATE NOT LOGGED INITIALLY clause.

7 If an import with the REPLACE action is performed within the same transaction as
7 a CREATE TABLE or ALTER TABLE statement where the NLI clause is invoked,
7 the import will not honor the NLI clause. All inserts will be logged.

7 **Workaround 1**

7 Delete the contents of the table using the DELETE statement, then invoke
7 the import with INSERT statement.

7 **Workaround 2**

7 Drop the table and recreate it, then invoke the import with INSERT
7 statement.

7 This limitation applies to DB2 UDB Version 7 and DB2 UDB Version 8.

7 **Data export with ODBC to file warehouse program**

7 The Data export with ODBC to file warehouse program does not support the
7 following Sybase data types:

- 7 • BIT
- 7 • BINARY
- 7 • VARBINARY

Data types that are not supported in the Development Center's integrated SQL debugger

The following data types are not supported in the SQL Debugger that is integrated into Development Center:

- For DB2 Universal Database (UDB) for Linux, UNIX, and Windows, the CHAR FOR BIT DATA, VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA, and GRAPHIC data types are not supported.
- For DB2 UDB for z/OS, the GRAPHIC data type is not supported and the BLOB and CLOB data types, used as parameters, are not supported. BLOB and CLOB used as local variables are supported.

Structured types in the Development Center

The Development Center no longer supports the creation of structured types.

Development Center limitations for 64-bit operating systems

Debugging of Java stored procedures against a 64-bit server is not supported by the Development Center. Debugging SQL stored procedures is supported on 64-bit Windows operating systems. Developing OLE DB or XML User Defined Functions is not supported for 64-bit servers.

Development Center (Linux)

You cannot use the Development Center to debug Java stored procedures running on any of the Linux distributions (32-bit, 64-bit, Intel™, zSeries®, or iSeries™).

Debugging stored procedures with double quotation marks

The Development Center does not support debugging for any stored procedure with double quotation marks (") in the stored procedure name, schema, or specific name.

Path settings needed to enable Java routines to compile in the Development Center

The Development Center cannot compile Java routines unless it knows where your developer kit versions are installed. Default directories for your developer kit versions are written to your \$HOME/.ibm/db2/dc/DB2DC.settings file when the Development Center starts for the first time. You can copy these directories into your \$USER.settings file and modify them with a Unicode editor, or you can create symbolic links to your developer kit directories in the default locations.

Development Center limitations to run and debug Java stored procedures simultaneously

The Development Center does not support running and debugging Java stored procedures simultaneously. In the Development Center, you can either run multiple Java stored procedures at the same time or debug a single Java stored procedure; you cannot run a Java stored procedure while debugging another Java stored procedure. By default, the KEEPFENCED database manager configuration keyword is set to KEEPFENCED=YES as required for debugging SQL stored procedures. When the keyword KEEPFENCED has the default value YES, the routine process is kept active and JVM port conflicts will occur. Java stored procedures will cause a JVM exception and will fail in any of the following circumstances when the default KEEPFENCED=YES database manager configuration setting is used:

- Building a Java stored procedure in the Development Center then debugging it

- 6 • One user running a Java stored procedure and another user debugging a Java
6 stored procedure while the initial Java stored procedure is still running
- 6 • One user debugging a Java stored procedure and another user running a Java
6 stored procedure while the initial Java stored procedure is being debugged

6 To work around this limitation, ensure that the KEEPFCENCED database manager
6 configuration keyword is set to KEEPFCENCED=NO by running the following
6 commands:

```
6 db2 update dbm cfg using KEEPFCENCED NO  
6 db2stop  
6 db2start
```

6 When KEEPFCENCED is set to NO, the db2fmp process will shut down when a
6 Java stored procedure call is finished, and DB2 Universal Database will start a new
6 db2fmp process to handle the next routine call. This ensures that there will be no
6 existing JVM in debug mode when you start to debug a Java stored procedure.

6 The KEEPFCENCED=YES setting is required to build SQL stored procedures for
6 debugging and to debug SQL stored procedures. When KEEPFCENCED=NO, you
6 can still build and execute SQL stored procedures but you cannot debug them.

9 **DB2SystemMonitor.getServerTimeMicros method not** 9 **supported**

9 The DB2® Universal JDBC Driver method
9 DB2SystemMonitor.getServerTimeMicros() is currently not supported by DB2
9 Universal Database™ for Linux™, UNIX®, and Windows® servers. The
9 DB2SystemMonitor.getServerTimeMicros() method returns 0 when connecting to
9 DB2 Universal Database for Linux, UNIX, and Windows servers.

9 **Universal JDBC Driver Type 2 not supported on DB2 UDB** 9 **Version 8.2.2 (Linux AMD64)**

9 DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8.2.2 on Linux AMD64 does not support
9 the Universal JDBC Driver Type 2. Support is planned for a future fixpak. JDBC
9 support in Version 8.2.2 is available using Universal JDBC Driver Type 4 and the
9 Legacy JDBC Type 2 driver (COM.ibm.db2.jdbc.app.DB2Driver).

7 **Cursors in PHP applications**

7 When the PHP interpreter creates a cursor on behalf of an application, it is created
7 by default as a Scrollable Keyset-driven cursor. In certain cases, this might cause
7 unexpected results to be returned. In order to avoid this situation, explicitly specify
7 the "FOR READ ONLY" clause for all SELECT statements that are used to update
7 data. Other alternatives include setting the CLI Configuration parameters
7 "Patch2=6", "Patch2=42", or "DisableKeysetCursor=1". However, each of these might
7 have other consequences. Refer to the *CLI Guide and Reference* documentation for
7 details regarding these configuration keywords.

7 **Bind option limitations for CLI packages**

7 Some bind options might not take effect when binding CLI packages with any of
7 the following list files: db2cli.lst, ddcsmvs.lst, ddc400.lst, ddcsvm.lst, or
7 ddcsvse.lst. Because CLI packages are used by CLI, ODBC, JDBC, OLE DB, .NET,
7 and ADO applications, any changes made to the CLI packages affect all
7 applications of these types. Only a subset of bind options are therefore supported

7 by default when binding CLI packages. The supported options are: ACTION,
7 COLLECTION, CLIPKG, OWNER, and REPLVER. All other bind options that
7 impact CLI packages are ignored.

7 To create CLI packages with bind options that are not supported by default,
7 specify the COLLECTION bind option with a collection ID that is different from
7 the default collection ID, NULLID. Any bind options specified are then accepted.
7 For example, to create CLI packages with the KEEP DYNAMIC YES bind option,
7 which is not supported by default, issue the following command:

```
7 db2 bind @db2cli.lst collection newcolid keepdynamic yes
```

7 In order for CLI/ODBC applications to access the CLI packages created in the new
7 collection, set the CurrentPackageSet CLI/ODBC keyword in the db2cli.ini
7 initialization file to the new collection ID.

7 To overwrite CLI packages that already exist under a particular collection ID,
7 perform either of the following actions:

- 7 • Drop the existing CLI package before issuing the bind command for this
7 collection ID
- 7 • Specify the ACTION REPLACE bind option when issuing the bind command

7 CLI LOAD restriction for specifying column names

7 If the INSERT statement supplied to the CLI LOAD utility includes a VALUES
7 clause, target columns cannot be specified. For example, the following statement is
7 supported by CLI LOAD:

```
7 INSERT into tableA VALUES (?, ?, ?)
```

7 This statement, however, that specifies target columns is not supported for use
7 with the CLI LOAD utility:

```
7 INSERT into tableA (col1, col2, col3) VALUES (?, ?, ?)
```

7 Failures when reporting a successful login during a 5 connection attempt (AIX)

5 When using OS authentication on AIX, DB2 Universal Database (UDB) attempts to
5 report a successful login to AIX upon successful authentication during a connection
5 attempt. Prior to Version 8 FixPak 5, if DB2 UDB was unable to report a successful
5 login, the connection would fail despite the user being authenticated. Starting with
5 Version 8 FixPak 5, the connection is allowed to continue and the failure is logged
5 in the db2diag.log file.

3 SNA support limitations in Version 8

3 The following support has been withdrawn from DB2 Universal Database (UDB)
3 Enterprise Server Edition (ESE) Version 8 for Windows and UNIX operating
3 systems, and from DB2 Connect Enterprise Edition (CEE) Version 8 for Windows
3 and UNIX operating systems:

- 3 • Multisite update (two-phase commit) capability using SNA cannot be used.
3 Applications that require multisite update (two-phase commit) *must* use TCP/IP
3 connectivity. Multisite update (two-phase commit) using TCP/IP to a host or
3 iSeries database server has been available for several releases. Host or iSeries
3 applications that require multisite update (two-phase commit) support can use
3 the new capability of TCP/IP multisite update (two-phase commit) support
3 within DB2 UDB ESE, Version 8.

- DB2 UDB ESE or DB2 CEE servers no longer accept client connections using SNA. As of Version 8, FixPak 1, DB2 UDB allows the 32-bit version of AIX, Solaris Operating Environment, HP-UX, and Windows applications to access host- or iSeries database servers using SNA. This support allows applications access to host or iSeries database servers using SNA, but using only one-phase commit.
- Sysplex support with DB2 UDB for z/OS is only available using TCP/IP. Sysplex support is not provided using SNA connectivity.
- Change password support is no longer available using SNA connectivity to host database servers.
- All SNA support will be withdrawn in the next version of DB2 UDB and DB2 Connect.

Tools catalog database creation not supported (Linux for AMD64)

The creation of the tools catalog database under a 64-bit DB2 Universal Database (UDB) instance on Linux (AMD64) is not supported. Do not attempt to create the tools catalog under a 64-bit instance using any of the following methods:

- Installing DB2 UDB
- Updating a 64-bit instance using the `db2isetup` command
- Issuing the `CREATE TOOLS CATALOG CLP` command after the installation is finished.

The creation of the tools catalog database under a 32-bit instance on Linux (AMD64) is supported as of Version 8.1.4.

Tools catalog database creation not supported (AIX, Solaris Operating Environments, and HP-UX)

The creation of the tools catalog is not supported during the installation of DB2 Universal Database (UDB) against 64-bit instances on the hybrid 64-bit platforms. The hybrid platforms are:

- AIX
- Solaris Operating Environments
- HP-UX
- Other platforms that support both 32-bit and 64-bit instances

If you want to create a tools catalog against a 64-bit instance, this can be done after the installation of DB2 UDB either through the Command Line Processor using the `CREATE TOOLS CATALOG CLP` command or using the Control Center. You will also need to install a 64-bit IBM Developer Kit for Java for this operation. Refer to the DB2 Administration Server section of the *DB2 Administration Guide* for more details.

Memory limitations for DB2 UDB Express and DB2 Workgroup Server Edition V8.2

There are memory limitations for the following products:

- IBM DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Express Edition (Named user option). The maximum memory per server is 4GB.
- IBM DB2 UDB Express Edition (CPU option). The maximum memory per server is 4GB.

- 8 • IBM DB2 UDB Workgroup Server Edition. The maximum memory per server is
8 16GB.
- 8 • IBM DB2 UDB Workgroup Server Unlimited Edition. The maximum memory per
8 server is 16GB.

Scheduling a warehouse process to run at intervals

When scheduling a warehouse process to run at intervals, you must determine the longest time it takes to run all the production steps in the process and schedule the intervals accordingly. If a process exceeds the scheduled time interval, all subsequently scheduled occurrences of that process will not run and will not be rescheduled.

Load and Import Columns page does not support DBCS characters in IXF files

If you use the Load wizard or Import notebook to set up a load or import from an IXF input file containing DBCS characters, the Columns page will not correctly display the column names contained in the file.

Security plug-in problem and restriction for DB2 UDB clients (Windows)

When developing security plug-ins that will be deployed in DB2 clients on Windows operating systems, do not unload any auxiliary libraries in the plug-in termination function. This restriction applies to all types of client security plug-ins, including group, user ID and password, Kerberos, and GSS-API plug-ins.

This restriction is caused by DB2 Universal Database's problem unloading security plug-ins in DB2 clients on Windows operating systems.

Two-part user ID not supported (Windows ME)

The two-part user ID for the CONNECT statement and ATTACH command, such as domainname\username, is not supported on Windows ME.

Minimum display settings for GUI tools

For the GUI tools such as the Control Center to work properly, you must have a screen resolution of at least 800 by 600 and use a display palette of at least 32 colors.

Do not partition Information Catalog Center tables

Tables that the Information Catalog Manager uses must be contained within a single database partition. Numerous methods are available to put the tables within a single partition. The following procedure is one approach that works.

1. Open a DB2 Command Line Processor and issue these commands:

- a. `CREATE DATABASE PARTITION GROUP partition_group_name
ON DBPARTITIONNUM partition_number`
- b. `CREATE REGULAR TABLESPACE tablespace_name
IN DATABASE PARTITION GROUP partition_group_name
MANAGED BY SYSTEM USING ('cname')`

where *partition_group_name* is the same in both commands.

2. Click Start -> Programs -> IBM DB2 -> Set-up Tools -> Manage Information Catalog Wizard.
3. On the Options page, specify the table space name in the **Table space** field.

Improper display of GB18030 characters in the title bar of a window

If you have characters from the GB18030 Chinese character encoding standard in the title bar of a window, they might appear as questions marks or squares.

Query Patroller limitations when DYN_QUERY_MGMT is disabled

Query Patroller cannot perform the following actions if the database configuration parameter DYN_QUERY_MGMT is disabled:

- Release queries from a held state
- Make a running or queued query run in the background when the query is in the foreground

If you attempt to release a query from held state, or change a foreground query to a background query when DYN_QUERY_MGMT is set to DISABLE, an error message will be displayed and the state of the query will not change. If held queries are scheduled to run and DYN_QUERY_MGMT is disabled at the time they start running, an error message is written to the qpdiag.log file and the queries are left in held state.

Query Patroller result tables now use DB2QPRT schema

Starting with FixPak 5, all new result tables are created in the schema DB2QPRT rather than in the schema of the submitter.

DROPIN privilege on the DB2QPRT schema is granted to operators whose profiles were created prior to installation of FixPak 5 and had either:

- The MONITORING privilege with edit authority
- The HISTORICAL ANALYSIS privilege with edit authority

DROPIN privilege on the DB2QPRT schema is granted the first time Query Patroller creates a result table in this schema.

Operators who are given MONITORING privilege with edit authority or HISTORICAL ANALYSIS privilege with edit authority after the installation of FixPak 5 are also granted DROPIN privilege on the DB2QPRT schema upon creation or update of their profiles.

Health indicator restrictions

The health monitor is unable to execute actions for the *db2.db2_op_status* health indicator if the indicator enters the down state. This state can be caused, for example, when an instance that the indicator is monitoring becomes inactive because of an explicit stop request or an abnormal termination. If you want to have the instance restart automatically after any abnormal termination, you must configure the fault monitor to keep the instance highly available.

Known problems and workarounds

The "db2gcf -k" command fails on DB2 UDB Workgroup Server Edition

Problem:

8 The db2gcf command starts, stops, or monitors a DB2 Universal Database (UDB)
8 instance, usually from an automated script, such as in an HA (high availability)
8 cluster.

8 Using the db2gcf system command with the -k parameter on DB2 UDB
8 Workgroup Server will fail.

8 **Workaround:**

8 The "db2gcf -k" command works only on DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition and
8 not on DB2 UDB Workgroup Server Edition.

7 **SQL1224 error from DRDA wrapper (AIX)**

7 If a 32-bit DB2 Universal Database (UDB) server is run on an AIX system and an
7 application running on the same system has more than one local database
7 connection through the DRDA[®] wrapper, then the application might get the
7 following error:

```
7 SQL1822N Unexpected error code "-1224" received from  
7 data source "W3_SERVER2".  
7 Associated text and tokens are  
7 func="DriverConnect"  
7 msg="SQL1224N A database agent could not be started to  
7 service a request, or was terminated as  
7 a result of a database system shutdown  
7 or a force command. "  
7 SQLSTATE=560BD
```

7 To avoid this error, put the following entry in the federated configuration file
7 (*instance_directory/cfg/db2dj.ini*):

```
7 EXTSHM=ON
```

7 **Note:** When you add entries to the federated configuration file, you must stop and
7 restart DB2 UDB for the changes to take effect.

7 Alternately, you can catalog the local DB2 UDB database as being on a TCP/IP
7 node. For example:

```
7 CATALOG TCP/IP NODE my_node REMOTE my_host SERVER 123;  
7 CATALOG DB mydb AT NODE my_node;  
7 CREATE WRAPPER drda;  
7 CREATE SERVER my_server TYPE DB2/UDB VERSION 8 WRAPPER drda  
7 AUTHORIZATION "my_id" PASSWORD "my_pw"  
7 OPTIONS(ADD DBNAME 'MYDB');
```

7 **Hotkeys not working in Microsoft Visual Studio .NET 7 Framework 1.1**

7 If your hotkeys are not working in Microsoft Visual Studio .NET Framework 1.1,
7 you can download a hotfix from the Microsoft Web site. You can find the hotfix in
7 the Microsoft Knowledge Base, article Q836745.

3 **The simplified Chinese locale (AIX)**

3 AIX has changed the code set bound to the simplified Chinese locale Zh_CN on:

- 3 • AIX Version 5.1.0000.0011 or later
- 3 • AIX Version 5.1.0 with maintenance level 2 or later

3 The code set has been changed from GBK (code page 1386) to GB18030 (code page
3 5488 or 1392). Since DB2 Universal Database (UDB) for AIX supports the GBK code

3 set natively and the GB18030 code set via Unicode, DB2 UDB will default the
3 Zh_CN locale's code set to ISO 8859-1 (code page 819), and in some operations will
3 also default the locale's territory to the United States (US).

To work around this limitation, you have two options:

- You can override the locale's code set from GB18030 to GBK and the territory from US to China (whose territory ID is CN and territory code is 86).
- You can use a different simplified Chinese locale.

If you choose to use the first option, issue the following commands:

```
db2set DB2CODEPAGE=1386
db2set DB2TERRITORY=86
db2 terminate
db2stop
db2start
```

If you choose to use the second option, change your locale from Zh_CN to either ZH_CN or zh_CN. The ZH_CN locale's code set is Unicode (UTF-8), while the zh_CN locale's code set is eucCN (code page 1383).

5 **The simplified Chinese locale (Red Hat Linux)**

5 Red Hat Version 8 and later (including Red Hat Enterprise Linux [RHEL] versions
5 2.1 and 3) have changed the default code set for simplified Chinese from GBK
5 (code page 1386) to GB18030 (code page 5488 or 1392).

3 Since DB2 Universal Database (UDB) for Linux supports the GBK code set natively
3 and the GB18030 code set via Unicode, DB2 UDB will default its code set to ISO
3 8859-1 (code page 819), and in some operations will also default its territory to the
3 United States (US).

3 To work around this limitation, you have two options:

- 3 • You can override the Red Hat default code set from GB18030 to GBK and the
3 territory from US to China (whose territory ID is CN and territory code is 86).
- 3 • You can use a different simplified Chinese locale.

3 If you choose to use the first option, issue the following commands:

```
3 db2set DB2CODEPAGE=1386
3 db2set DB2TERRITORY=86
3 db2 terminate
3 db2stop
3 db2start
```

3 If you choose to use the second option, issue any one of the following commands:

```
3 export LANG=zh_CN.gbk
3 export LANG=zh_CN
3 export LANG=zh_CN.utf8
```

3 where the code set associated with zh_CN is eucCN or code page 1383, and with
3 zh_CN.utf8 is code page 1208.

5 **Merant Driver Manager incompatibility (UNIX)**

5 There are incompatibilities with Unicode support when the Merant Driver
5 Manager accesses the DB2 ODBC driver on UNIX. These incompatibilities cause
5 the Merant Driver Manager to use Unicode even if the application did not request
5 Unicode use. This situation can lead to problems with components such as the
5 Data Warehouse Center, Information Catalog Manager, and MQSI, which require

5 the Merant Driver Manager to support non-IBM data sources. You can use an
5 alternate DB2 ODBC driver library without Unicode support enabled until a
5 permanent solution is available.

5 An alternative DB2 ODBC driver library without Unicode support enabled is
5 included with DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8.1 for AIX, HP-UX, and
5 Solaris Operating Environment. To use this alternative library, you must create a
5 copy of it, giving the copy the original DB2 ODBC driver library's name.

5 **Note:** The alternative (_36) library contains the Unicode functions required by the
5 DB2 JDBC driver. Using this library allows JDBC applications, including
5 WebSphere® Application Server, to work successfully with DB2 UDB.

5 To switch to the non-Unicode ODBC library on AIX, HP-UX, or the Solaris
5 Operating Environment, see the following instructions. Because this is a manual
5 process, you must carry it out every time you update your product, including after
5 the application of successive FixPaks or modification levels.

5 **Procedure:**

5 **AIX**

5 To create the alternate library on AIX:

- 5 1. As the instance owner, shut down all database instances using the
5 **db2stop force** command.
- 5 2. Using the DB2 administration server (DAS) instance ID, shut down the
5 DAS instance using the **db2admin stop force** command.
- 5 3. Back up the original db2.o file in the /usr/lpp/db2_81/lib directory.
- 5 4. Using root authority, issue the **slibclean** command.
- 5 5. Copy file db2_36.o to backup file db2.o, ensuring that ownership and
5 permissions remain consistent. Use the following commands:

```
5 cp db2_36.o db2.o  
5 -r--r--r-- bin:bin for db2.o
```

5 To switch back to the original object, follow the same procedure using the
5 backup file instead of the db2_36.o file.

5 **Solaris Operating Environment**

5 To create the alternate library in a Solaris Operating Environment:

- 5 1. As the instance owner, shut down all database instances using the
5 **db2stop force** command.
- 5 2. Using the DB2 administration server (DAS) instance ID, shut down the
5 DAS instance using the **db2admin stop force** command.
- 5 3. Back up the original libdb2.so.1 file in the /opt/IBMdb2/V8.1/lib
5 directory.
- 5 4. Copy file libdb2_36.so.1 to backup file libdb2.so.1, ensuring that
5 ownership and permissions remain consistent. Use the following
5 commands:

```
5 cp libdb2_36.so.1 libdb2.so.1  
5 -r-xr-xr-x bin:bin libdb2.so.1
```

- 5 5. Issue the **db2iupdt <instance>** command for each database instance
5 and the **dasupdt <das_instance>** command for the DAS instance.

5 To switch back to the original object, follow the same procedure using the
5 backup file instead of the libdb2_36.so.1 file.

5 HP-UX PA-RISC

5 To create the alternate library on HP-UX PA-RISC:

- 5 1. Shut down all database instances using the **db2stop force** command.
- 5 2. Shut down the DB2 administration server (DAS) instance using the
5 **db2admin stop force** command.
- 5 3. Back up the original libdb2.sl file in the /opt/IBMDB2/V8.1/lib
5 directory.
- 5 4. Copy file libdb2_36.sl to backup file libdb2.sl, ensuring that the
5 ownership and permissions remain consistent. Use the following
5 command to ensure the consistency:
5 cp libdb2_36.sl libdb2.sl
5 -r-xr-xr-x bin:bin for libdb2.sl
- 5 5. Issue the **db2iupdt <instance>** command for each database instance
5 and the **dasupdt <das_instance>** command for the DAS instance.

5 To switch back to the original object, follow the same procedure using the
5 backup file instead of the libdb2_36.sl file.

5 HP-UX on IA64

5 To create the alternate library on HP-UX on IA64:

- 5 1. Shut down all database instances using the **db2stop force** command.
- 5 2. Shut down the DB2 administration server (DAS) instance using the
5 **db2admin stop force** command.
- 5 3. Back up the original libdb2.so file in the /opt/IBMDB2/V8.1/lib
5 directory.
- 5 4. Copy file libdb2_36.so to backup file libdb2.so, ensuring that the
5 ownership and permissions remain consistent. Use the following
5 command to ensure the consistency:
5 cp libdb2_36.so libdb2.so
5 -r-xr-xr-x bin:bin for libdb2.so
- 5 5. Issue the **db2iupdt <instance>** command for each database instance
5 and the **dasupdt <das_instance>** command for the DAS instance.

5 To switch back to the original object, follow the same procedure using the
5 backup file instead of the libdb2_36.so file.

5 Other UNIX Operating Systems

5 Contact IBM Support if you require assistance with DB2 UDB and the
5 Merant Driver Manager on other UNIX operating systems.

2 NFS APAR IY32512 – Unavailable threads (AIX)

2 AIX 5 NFS APAR IY32512 might cause the **db2stop** command to stop on systems
2 with a large number of partitions.

2 On a server that is receiving large numbers of requests for blocking locks on files
2 that are already locked, the lock daemon might become unresponsive. This
2 situation occurs when all available locked threads are allocated to threads that are
2 waiting for the locks to become available, so there is no thread available to pick up
2 the work when the unlock request is made.

2 When this situation occurs the stopped nodes must be restarted. There is a DB2
2 Universal Database workaround for this situation by stopping the nodes one at a
2 time using the NODENUM option of the **db2stop** command.

4 **SQLFLAG (STD) precompiler option error**

4 If the SQLFLAG(STD) precompile option is enabled, it will cause the following
4 error: Abend C6 occurred while running Precompile program DSNHPC

4 Remove the SQLFLAG (STD) precompile option when using the Development
4 Center to create SQL stored procedures to run on DB2 Universal Database for
4 z/OS, Version 8.

7 **DB2 Connect Custom Advisor**

7 Despite being documented in the *DB2 Connect User's Guide*, the DB2 Connect
7 Custom Advisor is no longer supported in Version 8.2.

8 **Tools catalog database creation fails (HP-UX)**

8 **Problem**

8 When installing DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8.2 on HP-UX, the
8 CREATE TOOLS CATALOG command fails with SQLCODE -22209 if it
8 runs under a 32-bit instance and the DB2 Administration Server `jdk_path`
8 configuration parameter points to the HP-UX SDK 1.4. The failure occurs
8 because DB2 UDB Version 8.2 installs the HP-UX SDK 1.4 by default but
8 the Version 8.2 32-bit instance requires the HP-UX SDK 1.3 to run the
8 CREATE TOOLS CATALOG command successfully.

8 This failure can also occur when installing DB2 UDB Version 8.1 FixPak 7
8 if you manually updated the DB2 Administration Server `jdk_path`
8 configuration parameter to point to the HP-UX SDK 1.4, or if you dropped
8 and recreated the DB2 Administration Server (DAS). The failure occurs
8 because, in either of these cases, the `jdk_path` configuration parameter
8 changed to point to the HP-UX SDK 1.4.

8 A DB2 UDB Version 8.2 32-bit instance requires HP-UX SDK 1.3 to run
8 successfully.

8 **Workaround 1**

8 Create the tools catalog under a 64-bit instance.

8 **Workaround 2**

8 Create the tools catalog under a 32-bit instance by performing the
8 following steps:

- 8 1. Download the HP-UX SDK 1.3 from the HP-UX Web site:
8 <http://www.hp.com/products1/unix/java/>
- 8 2. Install the HP-UX SDK 1.3.
- 8 3. Update the DB2 Administration Server `jdk_path` configuration
8 parameter to point to the HP-UX SDK 1.3. For example:
8 `db2 update admin config using JDK_PATH /opt/java1.3`
- 8 4. Restart the DB2 Administration Server.
8 `db2admin stop`
8 `db2admin start`
- 8 5. Re-run the CREATE TOOLS CATALOG command under the 32-bit
8 instance.

Displaying Indic characters in the DB2 GUI tools

If you have problems displaying Indic characters when using the DB2 GUI tools, you might not have the required fonts installed on your system.

DB2 Universal Database (UDB) has packaged the following IBM TrueType and OpenType proportional Indic language fonts for your use. You can find these fonts in the font directory on any of the following CDs:

- *IBM Developer Kit, Java Technology Edition (64-bit) for AIX 5L*
- *DB2 Embedded Application Server and applications (XML registry, Web Administration tools and Java distributed debugger) for your operating system*

These fonts are to be used only in conjunction with DB2 UDB. You cannot engage in the general or unrestricted sale or distribution of these fonts:

Table 9. Indic fonts packaged with DB2 UDB

Typeface	Weight	Font File Name
Devanagari MT for IBM	Medium	devamt.ttf
Devanagari MT for IBM	Bold	devamtb.ttf
Tamil	Medium	TamilMT.ttf
Tamil	Bold	TamilMTB.ttf
Telugu	Medium	TeluguMT.ttf
Telugu	Bold	TeleguMTB.ttf

Detailed instructions on how to install the fonts and modify the `font.properties` file can be found in the Internationalization section of the IBM Development Kit for Java documentation.

In addition, the following Microsoft products come with Indic fonts that can be used with DB2 GUI tools:

- Microsoft Windows 2000 operating system
- Microsoft Windows XP operating system
- Microsoft Publisher
- Microsoft Office

GUI tools are not supported for zSeries servers (Linux)

With the exception of the DB2 Setup wizard, the GUI tools will not work on zSeries servers running the Linux operating system. This limitation includes any items normally launched from the Installation launchpad, such as the Quick Tour.

If you want to use the GUI tools with one of these systems, install the administrative tools on a client system with a different system configuration, and use this client to connect to your zSeries server.

Enclose DB2 Information Center search terms within quotation marks if they contain numbers

To get accurate search results in the DB2 Information Center you must enclose search terms that include numbers within quotation marks.

For example, if you search for the following term you will receive no results:

1.4.1

7 However, if you enclose the term within quotation marks, you receive the
7 appropriate results:

7 "1.4.1"

7 A search for the following term will return extra topics:

7 DB20000I

7 But a search on the following term works properly:

7 "DB20000I"

7 Information Catalog Center log file not generated when 4 importing tag language files

4 If an Information Catalog Center log file is not generated when you import tag
4 language files to the Information Catalog Center, perform the following
4 troubleshooting steps:

4 When running **db2icmimport** from a command line:

- 4 • If output files were not generated (.xml, .out, .err, .log), there is probably
4 an error on the command line. Verify that the first five arguments, which
4 are UserId, Password, Database, Catalog, and Tagfile, are correct. View
4 the syntax by entering the **db2icmimport** command. If this does not
4 solve the problem, modify **db2icmimport** to capture the output of the
4 **db2javit** command by using the -g option to save the output to a file.
4 For example:

```
4 db2javit -j:com.ibm.db2.common.icm.tag.IcmImport -w: -i:  
4 -o:"-Xmx128m -Xms32m" -g:"d:\temp\myimport.trc" ...
```

- 4 • If a log file was not generated, there is usually a parsing error. Look at
4 the .xml file and the .out file. If you can, insert a
4 ":COMMIT.CHKPID(DEBUG)" command at the beginning of the tag
4 language file. This command generates debug report messages and
4 checks the .xml and .out files for parsing errors.
- 4 • After parsing, errors should appear in the .log file. When the debug
4 report is being generated, look at the .log file and the .out file for
4 information.
- 4 • Always check the .err file to see if there is a runtime error.

4 When importing tag language files using the Information Catalog Center GUI:

- 4 • When you import tag language files using the GUI interface, no .out or
4 .err files are generated.
- 4 • If a .log or .xml file is generated, try to debug by using those files.
- 4 • If a .log or .xml file is not generated or does not help, run the import
4 process from a command line to get more information.

6 Binding Query Patroller packages

6 If the Query Patroller packages are not bound after applying a fixpak, a user
6 without DBADM authority or proper Query Patroller privileges can encounter the
6 following error when using the Query Patroller Center or Query Patroller
6 command line:

6 SQL0001N - Binding or precompilation did not complete successfully.

6 If you are using the Query Patroller Center, the SQL0001N error is logged in
6 qpdiag.log file. If you are using the Query Patroller command line, the SQL0001N
6 is returned to the console

6 Auto-bind code exists to initiate automatic binding. However, the automatic
6 binding fails when the connecting user does not have the necessary privileges to
6 execute all statements in the Query Patroller packages. A symptom of this problem
6 is missing folders in the Query Patroller Center.

6 To avoid this problem, the qpserver.lst packages should be bound manually by a
6 user with DBADM authority or necessary privileges after applying a fixpak.

9 Unavailability of ports with Query Patroller (Windows)

9 Submitted queries in Query Patroller might receive SQL code -29007 when there
9 are no more available ports on Windows XP or Windows 2003. The likelihood of
9 this error increases with an increasing number of clients accessing Query Patroller.

9 Problem:

9 The registry variables, MaxUserPort and TcpTimedWaitDelay, are used to set the
9 maximum available ports that Query Patroller can use and the communication
9 time out period, respectively. These variables are not added by default in Windows
9 Server 2003 or Windows XP, so they need to be set manually as follows:

```
9 MaxUserPort=65534  
9 TcpTimedWaitDelay=30
```

9 Workaround:

9 You will need to restart your system after completing the steps outlined below.

9 Use the Windows Registry Editor to create these registry variables in the path
9 HKey_Local_Machine\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Tcpip\Parameters:

- 9 1. Open the Registry Editor: Click **Start** -> **Run** -> type **regedit** -> click **OK**.
- 9 2. Locate the
9 HKey_Local_Machine\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Tcpip\Parameters
9 folder.
- 9 3. Right-click the
9 HKey_Local_Machine\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Tcpip\Parameters
9 folder and select **New** -> **String Value**.
- 9 4. Type **MaxUserPort**.
- 9 5. Right-click the new registry key and select **Modify**.
- 9 6. Type **65534** in the **Value Data** field and click **OK**.
- 9 7. Repeat steps 3 through 6, entering **TcpTimedWaitDelay** as the registry key and
9 **30** as the string value.
- 9 8. Close the Windows Registry Editor.
- 9 9. Restart your system for the changes to take effect.

9 For further information on the TcpTimedWaitDelay registry variable, visit the
9 MSDN Web site:

9 [http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/
9 us/randz/protocol/tcp_time-wait_delay.asp](http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/default.asp?url=/library/en-us/randz/protocol/tcp_time-wait_delay.asp)

1 Secure environments (Windows)

1 You might experience file permission problems if you are using DB2 Universal
1 Database (UDB) on Windows and are not an administrator on the Windows

1 system. If you receive an SQL1035N, SQL1652N, or SQL5005C error message,
1 possible causes and workarounds are shown in the following information:

1 **User does not have sufficient authority on the sqllib directory:**

1 **Problem**

1 User receives an SQL1035N or SQL1652N error when trying to open the
1 DB2 CLP or command window. The DB2 UDB code (core files) are
1 installed into a directory structure where write privileges are limited, but
1 some DB2 UDB tools need to write and create files in the DB2INSTPROF
1 directory.

1 **Workaround**

1 Create a new directory where you can grant users, at minimum, the
1 MODIFY permission and use either **db2set -g db2tempdir** to point to the
1 new directory, or set the db2tempdir variable in the Windows system
1 environment.

1 **User does not have sufficient authority to write to the sqllib*<instance_dir>*
1 directory even though user belongs to SYSADM_GROUP:**

1 **Problem**

1 User receives an SQL5005C system error when trying to update the
1 database manager configuration file (update dbm cfg). The user does not
1 have the required NTFS permissions to write to the sqllib*instance_dir*
1 directory even though you have added this user to the SYSADM_GROUP.

1 **First workaround**

1 Grant the users, at minimum, the MODIFY permission on the *instance_dir*
1 directory at the file system level.

1 **Second workaround**

1 Create a new directory where you can grant the user, at minimum, the
1 MODIFY permission. Use the **db2set db2instprof** command to point to the
1 new directory. You will need either to recreate the instance so that the
1 information is stored under the new instance directory specified by
1 db2instprof, or you will need to move the old instance directory to the
1 new directory.

2 **XML Extender sample programs renamed**

2 Some XML Extender sample programs might have the same name as other
2 installed programs. Accidentally invoking another program with the same name as
2 an XML Extender sample program can damage your XML files. The following list
2 shows the old XML Extender sample program names as well as new replacement
2 program names that are less likely to cause conflicts. Make sure you use the new
2 sample program names instead of the old ones to prevent damaging your XML
2 files.

2 *Table 10. Replacement sample programs for XML Extender (Windows)*

Old Program (Do not use)	New Program (Use)
insertx.exe	dxxisrt.exe
retrieve.exe	dxxretr.exe
retrieve2.exe	dxxretr2.exe
retrievec.exe	dxxretrc.exe
shred.exe	dxxshrd.exe

Table 10. Replacement sample programs for XML Extender (Windows) (continued)

Old Program (Do not use)	New Program (Use)
tests2x.exe	dxxgenx.exe
tests2xb.exe	dxxgenxb.exe
tests2xc.exe	dxxgenxc.exe

Table 11. Replacement sample programs for XML Extender (Linux and UNIX)

Old Program (Do not use)	New Program (Use)
insertx	dxxisrt
retrieve	dxxretr
retrieve2	dxxretr2
retrievec	dxxretrc
shred	dxxshrd
tests2x	dxxgenx
tests2xb	dxxgenxb
tests2xc	dxxgenxc

Using the new sample programs with the sample sqx files

The source code (.sqx files) for the executables listed previously are located in the samples\db2xml\c directory of your installation. The source files are still labeled with their old names. If you make changes to the source code, copy your newly compiled executables (with the old names) to the sqllib\bin directory.

On Windows platforms, you must make an additional copy, rename it with its new name above, and copy it to the bin directory. Both copies replace the existing files in the bin directory. For example, after compiling your new version of shred.exe, you need to make two copies and replace the files in the bin directory: one labeled shred.exe and the other renamed dxxshrd.exe.

On Linux and UNIX platforms, you need only to replace the file with the old name with your newly compiled version. If you create new executable files from these samples, you must copy the new files from the \SQLLIB\samples\db2xml\c\ directory into the \SQLLIB\bin\ directory, and then make an additional copy, renaming them according to the previous table.

Decomposing documents in XML Extender that contain non unique attribute and element names

You can now decompose documents that contain non-unique attributes or non-unique element names that map to different columns (of the same or different tables) without receiving the DXXQ045E error. The following is an example of an XML document with non-unique attributes and non-unique element names:

```

<Order ID="0001-6789">
  <!-- Note: attribute name ID is non-unique -->
  <Customer ID="1111">
    <Name>John Smith</Name>
  </Customer>
  <!-- Note: element name Name is non_unique -->
  <Salesperson ID="1234">
    <Name>Jane Doe</Name>
  </Salesperson>
</OrderDetail>

```

```

4         <ItemNo>xxxx-xxxx</ItemNo>
4         <Quantity>2</Quantity>
4         <UnitPrice>12.50</UnitPrice>
4     </OrderDetail>
4 </OrderDetail>
4         <ItemNo>yyyy-yyyy</ItemNo>
4         <Quantity>4</Quantity>
4         <UnitPrice>24.99</UnitPrice>
4     </OrderDetail>
4 </Order>

```

The accompanying DAD, which maps the duplicate elements and attributes to different columns, looks like this:

```

4 <element_node name="Order">
4   <RDB_node>
4     <table name="order_tab" key="order_id"/>
4     <table name="detail_tab"/>
4     <condition>
4       order_tab.order_id=detail_tab.order_id
4     </condition>
4   </RDB_node>
4
4   <!--attribute ID duplicated below, but mapped to a different col-->
4   <attribute_node name="ID">
4     <RDB_node>
4       <table name="order_tab" />
4       <column name="order_id" type="char(9)"/>
4     </RDB_node>
4   </attribute_node>
4
4   <element_node name="Customer">
4     <!--attribute ID duplicated above, but mapped to a different col-->
4     <attribute_node name="ID">
4       <RDB_node>
4         <table name="order_tab" />
4         <column name="cust_id" type="integer"/>
4       </RDB_node>
4     </attribute_node>
4
4     <!--element name duplicated below, but mapped to a different col-->
4     <element_node name="Name">
4       <text_node>
4         <RDB_node>
4           <table name="order_tab" />
4           <column name="cust_name" type="char(20)" />
4         </RDB_node>
4       </text_node>
4     </element_node>
4   </element_node>
4
4   <element_node name="Salesperson">
4     <!--attribute ID duplicated above, but mapped to a different col-->
4     <attribute_node name="ID">
4       <RDB_node>
4         <table name="order_tab" />
4         <column name="salesp_id" type="integer"/>
4       </RDB_node>
4     </attribute_node>
4
4     <!--element name duplicated above, but mapped to a different col-->
4     <element_node name="Name">
4       <text_node>
4         <RDB_node>
4           <table name="order_tab" />
4           <column name="salesp_name" type="char(20)" />
4         </RDB_node>

```

```

4         </text_node>
4     </element_node>
4 </element_node>
4
4     <element_node name="OrderDetail" multi_occurrence="YES">
4         <element_node name="ItemNo">
4             <text_node>
4                 <RDB_node>
4                     <table name="detail_tab" />
4                     <column name="itemno" type="char(9)"/>
4                 </RDB_node>
4             </text_node>
4         </element_node>
4         <element_node name="Quantity">
4             <text_node>
4                 <RDB_node>
4                     <table name="detail_tab" />
4                     <column name="quantity" type="integer"/>
4                 </RDB_node>
4             </text_node>
4         </element_node>
4         <element_node name="UnitPrice">
4             <text_node>
4                 <RDB_node>detail_tab" />
4                 <table name="detail_tab" />
4                 <column name="unit_price" type="decimal(7,2)"/>
4             </RDB_node>
4             </text_node>
4         </element_node>
4     </element_node>
4 </element_node>

```

4 The contents of the tables would look like the following sample after the preceding
4 document is decomposed:

4 ORDER_TAB:

ORDER_ID	CUST_ID	CUST_NAME	SALESP_ID	SALESP_NAME
0001-6789	1111	John Smith	1234	Jane Doe

4 DETAIL_TAB:

ORDER_ID	ITEMNO	QUANTITY	UNIT_PRICE
0001-6789	xxxx-xxxx	2	12.50
0001-6789	yyyy-yyyy	4	24.99

5 **Note:** To map multiple elements and attributes to the same column of the same
5 table, define an alias for the table and use the alias in the DAD <table>
5 element of one of the mappings.

4 Differences between SNA and TCP/IP when using DB2 5 Connect

5 When connecting to an OS/390 system using SNA, the host VTAM[®] layer
5 automatically flows a commit when a new connection is made. The automatic
5 commit allows the host side thread state to be inactive, and the thread immediately
5 becomes inactive.

5 However, when connecting to an OS/390 system using TCP/IP, there is no
5 automatic commit. The application itself must flow an explicit commit after the
5 connection to allow the thread to be inactive on the host. Without the explicit
5 commit, the thread is subject to an idle thread time out.

5
5

The suggested workaround is to rewrite the application so that it will perform an explicit commit if the connection goes idle after the connection.

Documentation updates

Administration: Implementation

Automatic storage

The format of the names for the containers has changed in such a way that the table space ID and the container ID have also changed. The new format is:

```
<storage path>/<instance>/NODE###  
/T#####  
/C#####.<EXT>
```

where:

- /T##### is the table space ID. For example, T0000003.
- /C##### is the container ID. For example, C0000012.

Defining a generated column on an existing table

Starting with DB2[®] Universal Database Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9), generated columns can be used in unique indexes.

Generated columns cannot be used in constraints, referential constraints, primary keys, and global temporary tables. A table created with LIKE and materialized views does not inherit generated column properties.

Aggregate registry variables

When you have set DB2WORKLOAD=SAP, the user table space SYSTOOLSPACE and the user temporary table space SYSTOOLSTEMPSPACE are not automatically created. These table spaces are used for tables created automatically by the following wizards, utilities, or functions:

- Automatic maintenance
- Design advisor
- Control Center database information panel
- SYSINSTALLOBJECTS stored procedure, if the table space input parameter is not specified
- GET_DBSIZE_INFO stored procedure

Without the SYSTOOLSPACE and SYSTOOLSTEMPSPACE table spaces, you cannot use these wizards, utilities, or functions.

To be able to use the wizards, utilities, or functions, do either of the following:

- Manually create SYSTOOLSPACE (on the catalog node only, if using DPF). For example:

```
CREATE REGULAR TABLESPACE SYSTOOLSPACE  
  IN IBMCATGROUP  
  MANAGED BY SYSTEM  
  USING ('SYSTOOLSPACE')
```

- Call SYSINSTALLOBJECTS to create objects, specifying a valid table space, for each of the following tool names: "DB2AC", "POLICY" and "STMG_DBSIZE_INFO"

9 After completing at least one of these choices, create a user temporary table space
9 (also on the catalog node only, if using DPF). For example:

```
9 CREATE USER TEMPORARY TABLESPACE SYSTOOLSTMPSPACE  
9 IN IBMCATGROUP  
9 MANAGED BY SYSTEM  
9 USING ('SYSTOOLSTMPSPACE')
```

9 Once the table space SYSTOOLSPACE and the temporary table space
9 SYSTOOLSTEMPSPACE are created, you can use the wizards, utilities, or functions
9 mentioned earlier.

8 Authentication considerations for remote clients

8 The authentication type DATA_ENCRYPT_CMP is designed to allow clients from a
8 previous release that do not support data encryption to connect to a server using
8 SERVER_ENCRYPT authentication instead of DATA_ENCRYPT. This
8 authentication does not work when the following three statements are true:

- 8 • The client level is Version 7.2.
- 8 • The gateway level is Version 8 FixPak 7 or later.
- 8 • The server is Version 8 FixPak 7 or later.

8 In this case, the client cannot connect to the server. To allow the connection, you
8 must either upgrade your client to Version 8, or have your gateway level at
8 Version 8 FixPak 6 or earlier.

8 Direct I/O (DIO) and concurrent I/O (CIO) support

8 Direct I/O (DIO) improves memory performance because it bypasses caching at
8 the file system level. This process reduces CPU overhead and makes more memory
8 available to the database instance.

8 Concurrent I/O (CIO) includes the advantages of DIO and also relieves the
8 serialization of write accesses.

8 DB2 Universal Database (UDB) supports DIO and CIO on AIX; and DIO on
8 HP-UX, Solaris Operating Environment, Linux, and Windows.

8 The keywords NO FILE SYSTEM CACHING and FILE SYSTEM CACHING are
8 part of the CREATE and ALTER TABLESPACE SQL statements to allow you to
8 specify whether DIO or CIO is to be used with each table space. When NO FILE
8 SYSTEM CACHING is in effect, DB2 UDB attempts to use concurrent I/O
8 wherever possible. In cases, where CIO is not supported (for example, if JFS is
8 used), DIO is used instead.

8 For more information, refer to the article “Improve database performance on file
8 system containers in IBM DB2 UDB Stinger using Concurrent I/O on AIX” located
8 at the following URL:

8 <http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/db2/library/techarticle/dm-0408lee/>

8 Distributor technology and automatic client rerouting

8 The following information is part of the *Administration Guide: Implementation*
8 Appendix B “Using automatic client rerouting”:

8 The DB2 Universal Database for Linux, UNIX, and Windows automatic client
8 reroute feature allows client applications to recover from a loss of communication

8 with the server by automatically reestablishing the database connection from the
8 client to the server, so that the application can continue to work with minimal
8 interruption.

8 When a client to server connection fails, the client's requests for reconnection are
8 distributed to a defined set of systems by a distributor or dispatcher, such as
8 WebSphere EdgeServer

8 You may be using Distributor Technology in an environment similar to the
8 following:

8 Client → Distributor Technology → (DB2 Connect Server 1 or DB2 Connect
8 Server 2) → DB2 z/OS

8 where:

- 8 • The Distributor Technology component has a TCP/IP host name of DThostname
- 8 • The DB2 Connect Server 1 has a TCP/IP host name of GWYhostname1
- 8 • The DB2 Connect Server 2 has a TCP/IP host name of GWYhostname2
- 8 • The DB2 z/OS server has a TCP/IP host name of zOShostname

8 The client is catalogued using DThostname in order to utilize the distributor
8 technology to access either of the DB2 Connect Servers. The intervening distributor
8 technology makes the decision to use GWYhostname1 or GWYhostname2. Once
8 the decision is made, the client has a direct socket connection to one of these two
8 DB2 Connect gateways. Once the socket connectivity is established to the chosen
8 DB2 Connect server, you have a typical client to DB2 Connect server to DB2 z/OS
8 connectivity.

8 For example, assume the distributor chooses GWYhostname2. This produces the
8 following environment:

8 Client → DB2 Connect Server 2 → DB2 z/OS

8 The distributor does not retry any of the connections if there is any communication
8 failure. If you want to enable the Automatic Client Reroute feature for a database
8 in such an environment, the alternate server for the associated database or
8 databases in the DB2 Connect Server (DB2 Connect Server 1 or DB2 Connect
8 Server 2) should be set up to be the distributor (DThostname). Then, if DB2
8 Connect Server 1 locks up for any reason, Automatic Client Reroute is triggered
8 and client connection is retried with the distributor as both primary and alternate
8 server. This option allows you to combine and maintain the distributor capabilities
8 with the DB2 Automatic Client Reroute feature. Setting the alternate server to a
8 host other than the distributor host name will still provide the clients with the
8 Automatic Client Reroute feature. However, the clients will establish direct
8 connections to the defined alternate server and bypass the distributor technology,
8 which eliminates the distributor and the value that it brings.

8 Automatic Client Reroute will intercept the following sqlcodes:

- 8 • sqlcode -20157
- 8 • sqlcode -1768 (reason code = 7)

Automatic client reroute considerations for cataloging on a DB2 Connect server

Consider the following two items involving alternate server connectivity with DB2 Connect server:

- The first consideration involves using DB2 Connect server for providing access to a host or iSeries database on behalf of both remote and local clients. In such situations, confusion can arise regarding alternate server connectivity information in a system database directory entry. To minimize this confusion, consider cataloging two entries in the system database directory to represent the same host or iSeries database. Catalog one entry for remote clients and catalog another for local clients.
- Secondly, the alternate server information that is returned from a target server is kept only in cache. If the DB2 process is terminated, the cache information, and therefore the alternate server information, is lost.

Local system account support (Windows)

Applications running under the context of the local system account (LSA) are supported on all Windows platforms, except Windows ME.

Two-part user ID support

The CONNECT statement and ATTACH command support two-part user IDs. The qualifier of the SAM-compatible user ID is the NetBIOS style name which has a maximum length of 15 characters. This feature is not supported on Windows ME.

Kerberos authentication details

Kerberos and client principals:

You can override the Kerberos server principal name used by the DB2 Universal Database (UDB) server on UNIX[®] and Linux[™] operating systems. Set the DB2_KRB5_PRINCIPAL environment variable to the desired fully qualified server principal name. The instance must be restarted because the server principal name is only recognized by DB2 UDB after **db2start** is run.

Additional information for Kerberos support

Linux prerequisites:

The prerequisites for Linux Kerberos support are inaccurately reported in the documentation. The provided DB2 Kerberos security plug-in is supported with Red Hat Enterprise Linux Advanced Server 3 with the IBM Network Authentication Service (NAS) 1.4 client.

zSeries and iSeries compatibility:

For connections to zSeries and iSeries, the database must be cataloged with the AUTHENTICATION KERBEROS parameter and the TARGET PRINCIPAL parameter name must be explicitly specified.

Neither zSeries nor iSeries support mutual authentication.

Windows issues:

- Due to the manner in which Windows detects and reports some errors, the following conditions result in an unexpected client security plug-in error (SQL30082N, rc=36):
 - Expired account
 - Invalid password
 - Expired password
 - Password change forced by administrator
 - Disabled account
- Furthermore, in all cases, the DB2 administration log or db2diag.log will indicate "Logon failed" or "Logon denied."
- If a domain account name is also defined locally, connections explicitly specifying the domain name and password will fail with the following error:
The Local Security Authority cannot be contacted

The error is a result of Windows locating the local user first. The solution is to fully qualify the user in the connection string. For example:

```
name@DOMAIN.IBM.COM
```

- Windows accounts cannot include the @ character in their name because the character is assumed to be the domain separator by the DB2 Kerberos plug-in.
 - When interoperating with a non-Windows platform, ensure that all Windows domain server accounts and all Windows client accounts are configured to use DES encryption. If the account used to start the DB2 service is not configured to use DES encryption, the DB2 server will fail to accept Kerberos contexts. In particular, DB2 Universal Database will fail with an unexpected server plug-in error, and will log that the AcceptSecurityContext API returned SEC_I_CONTINUE_NEEDED (0x00090312L).
- To determine if Windows accounts are configured to use DES encryption, look under **Account properties** in the **Active Directory**. A restart might be required if the account properties are changed.
- If the client and server are both on Windows, then the DB2 service can be started under the local system account. However, if the client and server are in different domains, the connection might fail with an invalid target principal name error. The workaround is to explicitly catalog the target principal name on the client using the fully qualified server host name and the fully qualified domain name, in the following format:

```
host/<server hostname>@<server domain name>
```

For example:

```
host/myhost.domain.ibm.com@DOMAIN.IBM.COM
```

Otherwise, you must start the DB2 service under a valid domain account.

Administration: Performance

DB2_RESOURCE_POLICY registry variable accepts a new element

Starting with DB2 Universal Database™ (UDB) Version 8.2.2, the configuration file specified by the DB2_RESOURCE_POLICY registry variable accepts a SCHEDULING_POLICY element. The SCHEDULING_POLICY element can be used on some platforms to select:

- The operating system scheduling policy that is used by the DB2 UDB server

9 **Note:** The capability to set an operating system scheduling policy extends to
9 DB2 for AIX[®]. It was previously available only for DB2 UDB for
9 Windows[®] using the DB2NTPRCLASS registry variable.

- 9 • The operating system priorities that are used by individual DB2 server agents

9 The registry variables DB2PRIORITIES and DB2NTPRCLASS can be used
9 separately to control the operating system scheduling policy and set DB2 agent
9 priorities.

9 However, the specification of a SCHEDULING_POLICY element in the resource
9 policy configuration file provides a single place to specify both the scheduling
9 policy and the associated agent priorities.

9 **Example 1:**

9 Selection of the AIX SCHED_FIFO2 scheduling policy with a priority boost for the
9 db2 log writer and reader processes:

```
9       <RESOURCE_POLICY>  
9        <SCHEDULING_POLICY>  
9         <POLICY_TYPE>SCHED_FIFO2</POLICY_TYPE>  
9         <PRIORITY_VALUE>60</PRIORITY_VALUE>  
9  
9         <EDU_PRIORITY>  
9          <EDU_NAME>db2loggr</EDU_NAME>  
9          <PRIORITY_VALUE>56</PRIORITY_VALUE>  
9         </EDU_PRIORITY>  
9  
9         <EDU_PRIORITY>  
9          <EDU_NAME>db2loggr</EDU_NAME>  
9          <PRIORITY_VALUE>56</PRIORITY_VALUE>  
9         </EDU_PRIORITY>  
9       </SCHEDULING_POLICY>  
9      </RESOURCE_POLICY>
```

9 **Example 2:**

9 Replacement for DB2NTPRCLASS=H on Windows.

```
9       <RESOURCE_POLICY>  
9        <SCHEDULING_POLICY>  
9         <POLICY_TYPE>HIGH_PRIORITY_CLASS</POLICY_TYPE>  
9       </SCHEDULING_POLICY>  
9      </RESOURCE_POLICY>
```

9 **New system environment variables (Linux)**

8 The DB2_MAPPED_BASE and DB2DBMSADDR system environment variables
8 have been added at FixPak 8.

8 Use of these registry variables is only recommended for advanced users.

8 **DB2_MAPPED_BASE:**

8 **Variable name**

8 DB2_MAPPED_BASE

8 **Values**

8 0 OR (hex) virtual address in the 31-bit and 32-bit address range OR NULL
8 (not set)

8 **Operating systems**

8 Linux on x86 and Linux on zSeries (31-bit)

Description

The DB2_MAPPED_BASE registry variable can be used to increase the amount of contiguous virtual address space available to a DB2 Universal Database (UDB) process by relocating the attachment address of the shared libraries for the specific process. The contiguous virtual address space is important to maximize the amount of database shared memory available to DB2 UDB. This variable is only effective on distributions that include the mapped_base file in the process identification directory in the proc file system.

DB2 UDB will attempt to relocate the shared libraries to the virtual address 0x10000000 if this variable is not set.

The registry variable can also be set to any virtual address (in hex) in the range of the 31 and 32-bit address space.

Note: An incorrect address can cause severe issues with DB2 UDB, ranging from an inability to start DB2 UDB to an inability to connect to the database. An incorrect address is one that collides with an area in memory that is already in use or is predestined to be used for something else. To address this problem, reset the DB2_MAPPED_BASE variable to NULL by using the following command:

```
db2set DB2_MAPPED_BASE=
```

The following message may appear multiple times in the db2diag.log file because this change is required once per logical node:

```
ADM0506I DB2 has automatically updated the "mapped_base"
kernel parameter from "0x40000000(hex) 1073741824(dec)" to
the recommended value "0x10000000(hex) 268435456(dec)".
```

This message will only appear if setting of the registry variable successful, and it will include the address that the shared libraries are relocated to.

DB2DBMSADDR:

Variable name

DB2DBMSADDR

Values

Virtual addresses in the range 0x09000000 to 0xB0000000 in increments of 0x10000

Operating systems

Linux on x86 and Linux on zSeries (31-bit)

Description

Specifies the default database shared memory address in hexadecimal format.

Note: An incorrect address can cause severe issues with DB2 UDB, ranging from an inability to start DB2 UDB, to an inability to connect to the database. An example of an incorrect address is one that collides with an area in memory that is already in use or predestined to be used for something else. To address this problem, reset the DB2DBMSADDR variable to NULL by using the following command:

```
db2set DB2DBMSADDR=
```

8 This variable can be set in conjunction with DB2_MAPPED_BASE or alone
 8 to fine tune the address space layout of DB2 UDB processes. This variable
 8 changes the location of the instance shared memory from it's current
 8 location at virtual address 0x20000000 to the new value given.

7 New communication registry variable

7 The DB2TCP_CLIENT_RCVTIMEOUT registry variable has been added in Version
 7 8.2.

7 *Table 12. Communications variables*

7 Variable name	7 Operating systems	7 Values
7 Description		
7 DB2TCP_CLIENT_RCVTIMEOUT	7 All	7 Default=0 (not set) 7 Values: 0 to 32767 seconds
7 Specifies the number of seconds a client waits for data on a TCP/IP receive.		
7 There is no timeout if the registry variable is not set or is set to 0. If the TCP/IP receive 7 returns with data before the timeout value has expired, the application proceeds as usual. 7 If the timeout value expires before data is returned, the connection closes.		
7 Note: This registry variable is applicable to the DB2 Client and the client side of the DB2 7 Gateway only. It is not applicable to the DB2 Server. 7		

7 New performance variable

7 The DB2_LARGE_PAGE_MEM performance variable has been added in Version
 7 8.2.

7 *Table 13. Performance variables*

7 Variable name	7 Operating systems	7 Values
7 Description		
7 DB2_LARGE_PAGE_MEM	7 AIX 5.x 64-bit only 7 Linux	7 Default=NULL 7 Use * to denote that all applicable memory regions should use large 7 page memory, or a comma-separated list of specific memory regions that should use 7 large page memory. Available regions vary by operating system. On AIX 5.x 64-bit, the following 7 regions can be specified: DB, DBMS, or PRIVATE. On Linux, the following region can be specified: 7 DB. 7

Table 13. Performance variables (continued)

Variable name	Operating systems	Values
Description		
<p>Large page memory is supported only for DB2 Universal Database (UDB) for AIX 5L, 64-bit Edition, and DB2 UDB for Linux.</p>		
<p>The DB2_LARGE_PAGE_MEM registry variable is used to enable large page support when running on AIX 5.x or any Linux architecture with the appropriate kernel support. This registry variable deprecates the DB2_LGPAGE_BP registry variable, which can only be used to enable large-page memory for the database shared memory region. This can now be enabled by setting DB2_LARGE_PAGE_MEM=DB. Any documentation that mentions enabling large pages with the DB2_LGPAGE_BP registry variable can be treated as synonymous with setting DB2_LARGE_PAGE_MEM=DB.</p>		
<p>Large page usage is primarily intended to provide performance improvements to high performance computing applications. Memory access intensive applications that use large amounts of virtual memory may obtain performance improvements by using large pages. To enable DB2 UDB to use large pages, you must first configure the operating system to use large pages.</p>		
<p>Enabling large private pages will increase DB2 UDB memory usage by a significant amount, as each DB2 UDB agent will consume at least 1 large page (16MB) of physical memory. To enable large pages for agent private memory on 64-bit DB2 UDB for AIX (the DB2_LARGE_PAGE_MEM=PRIVATE setting), the following conditions must be met, in addition to configuring large pages on the operating system:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The instance owner must possess the CAP_BYPASS_RAC_VMM and CAP_PROPOGATE capabilities. • The kernel must support interfaces that allow a process to modify its page size at runtime. . 		
<p>On 64-bit DB2 UDB for AIX, enabling this variable reduces the size of the shared memory segment backing database memory to the minimum requirement. The default is to create a 64 GB segment: see the database shared memory size (<i>database_memory</i>) database configuration parameter for more details. This avoids pinning more shared memory in RAM than is likely to be used.</p>		
<p>By setting this variable, the ability to dynamically increase the overall database shared memory configuration (for example, to increase the size of buffer pools) will be limited.</p>		
<p>On Linux, there is an additional requirement for the availability of the libcap.so library. This library must be installed for this option to work. If this option is turned on, and the library is not on the system, DB2 UDB will disable the large kernel pages and continue to function as it would previously.</p>		
<p>On Linux, to verify that large kernel pages are available, issue the following command:</p> <pre style="margin-left: 40px;">cat /proc/meminfo</pre>		
<p>If it is available, the following three lines should appear (with different numbers depending on the amount of memory configured on your machine):</p> <pre style="margin-left: 40px;">HugePages_Total: 200 HugePages_Free: 200 Hugepagesize: 16384 KB</pre>		
<p>If you do not see these lines, or if the HugePages_Total is 0, configuration of the operating system or kernel is required.</p>		

SQL compiler variables

The following update applies to the topic “SQL compiler variables” in Appendix A “DB2 registry and environment variables” of the *Administration Guide: Performance*:

When either or both of the DB2 compiler variables DB2_MINIMIZE_LISTPREFETCH and DB2_INLIST_TO_NLJN, are set to ON, they remain active even if REOPT(ONCE) is specified.

Configuration parameter updates

Following are the updates to the configuration parameter documentation:

authentication – Authentication type

The Authentication type (authentication) database manager configuration parameter also accepts the following values:

- DATA_ENCRYPT

The server accepts encrypted SERVER authentication schemes and the encryption of user data. The authentication works exactly the same way as SERVER_ENCRYPT.

The following user data are encrypted when using this authentication type:

- SQL statements.
- SQL program variable data.
- Output data from the server processing an SQL statement and including a description of the data.
- Some or all of the answer set data resulting from a query.
- Large object (LOB) data streaming.
- SQLDA descriptors.

- DATA_ENCRYPT_CMP

The server accepts encrypted SERVER authentication schemes and the encryption of user data. In addition, this authentication type allows compatibility with earlier products that do not support DATA_ENCRYPT authentication type. These products are permitted to connect with the SERVER_ENCRYPT authentication type and without encrypting user data.

Products supporting the new authentication type must use it. This authentication type is only valid in the server’s database manager configuration file and is not valid when used on the CATALOG DATABASE command.

util_impact_lim – Instance impact policy

Starting with DB2 Universal Database Version 8.2, the default value of the **Instance impact policy** (*util_impact_lim*) database manager configuration parameter changes from 100 to 10.

sysadm_group, sysmaint_group, sysctrl_group, sysmon_group

The following database manager configuration parameters can all accept group names of 30 bytes (or less) on all platforms:

- System administration authority group name (*sysadm_group*)
- System maintenance authority group name (*sysmaint_group*)
- System control group authority name (*sysctrl_group*)
- System monitor authority group name (*sysmon_group*)

8 The table in the topic "Database manager configuration parameter summary"
8 contains incorrect data types for these database manager configuration parameters.
8 The correct value in all cases is char(30).

8 **estore_seg_sz – Extended storage memory segment size**

8 The maximum size for the **Extended storage memory segment size database**
8 (*estore_seg_size*) configuration parameter on Windows based platforms is 16 777 216.

8 **hadr_timeout – HADR timeout value**

8 The correct upper limit of the **HADR timeout value** (*hadr_timeout*) database
8 configuration parameter is 4 294 967 295.

8 **locklist – Maximum storage for lock list**

8 The documentation for the **Maximum storage for locklist** (*locklist*) database
8 configuration parameter states that the maximum value for Windows 64-bit and
8 32-bit servers that service only local clients is 60 000. This value is incorrect, and
8 should be 524 288.

8 **num_db_backups – Number of database backups**

8 The range of values for the **Number of database backups** (*num_db_backups*)
8 database configuration parameter is incorrect. The correct range is 0 – 32 767.

8 **SQLDBCONF database configuration parameter file**

8 After migrating to DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8.2 from Version 8.1,
8 DB2 UDB uses a new 16 KB database configuration parameter file named
8 SQLDBCONF. (In Version 8.1, the database configuration parameter file was only 4
8 KB and named SQLDBCON).

8 **Change to the DB2_HASH_JOIN default value**

8 As of Version 8.1 the registry variable DB2_HASH_JOIN is set to ON by default.

8 The hash-join variable should be used, but it needs to be tuned to get the best
8 performance.

8 Hash-join performance is best if you can avoid hash loops and overflow to disk. To
8 tune hash-join performance, estimate the maximum amount of memory available
8 for the **sheapthres** parameter , then tune the **sortheap** parameter. Increase its value
8 until you avoid as many hash loops and disk overflows as possible, but do not
8 reach the limit specified by the **sheapthres** parameter.

8 For more information, see the "Join methods" topic in the *Administration Guide:*
8 *Performance* manual.

7 **DB2NTNOCACHE registry variable is deprecated**

7 Functionality previously achieved through DB2NTNOCACHE can be achieved at
7 the table space level by specifying the NO FILE SYSTEM CACHING clause on the
7 CREATE TABLESPACE or the ALTER TABLESPACE statement. Refer to *SQL*
7 *Reference* for details on usage. The DB2NTNOCACHE registry variable will be
7 removed in a future release.

7 **Explain tables and organization of explain information**

7 Explain tables might be common to more than one user. However, the explain
7 tables can be defined for one user, and aliases can be defined for each additional
7 user using the same name to point to the defined tables. Alternatively, the explain

7 tables can be defined under the SYSTOOLS schema. The Explain facility will
7 default to the SYSTOOLS schema if no other explain tables or aliases are found
7 under the user's session ID for dynamic SQL, or the statement authorization ID for
7 static SQL. Each user sharing the common explain tables must have insert
7 permission on those tables. Read permission for the common explain tables should
7 also be limited, typically to users who analyze the explain information.

7 **Guidelines for capturing explain information**

7 Explain data is captured if you request it when an SQL statement is compiled.
7 Consider how you expect to use the captured information when you request
7 explain data.

7 **Capturing information in the explain tables:**

- 7 • Dynamic SQL statements:

7 Explain table information is captured in any of the following cases:

- 7 – The CURRENT EXPLAIN MODE special register is set to:
 - 7 - YES: The SQL compiler captures explain data and executes the SQL
7 statement.
 - 7 - EXPLAIN: The SQL compiler captures explain data but does not execute
7 the SQL statement.
 - 7 - RECOMMEND INDEXES: The SQL compiler captures explain data and the
7 recommended indexes are placed in the ADVISE_INDEX table, but the SQL
7 statement is not executed.
 - 7 - EVALUATE INDEXES: The SQL compiler uses indexes placed by the user
7 in the ADVISE_INDEX table for evaluation. In EVALUATE INDEXES
7 mode, all dynamic statements are explained as if these virtual indexes were
7 available. The SQL compiler then chooses to use the virtual indexes if they
7 improve the performance of the statements. Otherwise, the indexes are
7 ignored. To find out if proposed indexes are useful, review the EXPLAIN
7 results.
 - 7 - REOPT: The SQL compiler captures Explain data for static or dynamic SQL
7 statements during statement reoptimization at execution time, when actual
7 values for the host variables, special registers, or parameter markers are
7 available.
- 7 – The EXPLAIN ALL option has been specified on the BIND or PREP
7 command. The SQL compiler captures explain data for dynamic SQL at
7 runtime, even if the CURRENT EXPLAIN MODE special register is set to NO.
7 The SQL statement also executes and returns the results of the query.

7 **Additional return codes from db2CfgGet API, collate_info 7 parameter**

7 The collating information parameter can only be displayed using the db2CfgGet
7 API. It **cannot** be displayed through the command line processor or the Control
7 Center.

7 Configuration Type	Database
7 Parameter Type	Informational

7 This parameter provides 260 bytes of database collating information. The first 256
7 bytes specify the database collating sequence, where byte "n" contains the sort
7 weight of the code point whose underlying decimal representation is "n" in the
7 code page of the database.

7 The last 4 bytes contain internal information about the type of the collating
7 sequence. The last 4 bytes of collate_info is an integer. The integer is sensitive to
7 the endian order of the platform. The possible values are:

- 7 • 0 – The sequence contains non-unique weights
- 7 • 1 – The sequence contains all unique weights
- 7 • 2 – The sequence is the identity sequence, for which strings are compared byte
7 for byte.
- 7 • 3 – The sequence is NLSCHAR, used for sorting characters in a TIS620-1 (code
7 page 874) Thai database.
- 7 • 4 – The sequence is IDENTITY_16BIT, which implements the "CESU-8
7 Compatibility Encoding Scheme for UTF-16: 8-Bit" algorithm as specified in the
7 Unicode Technical Report #26 available at the Unicode Technical Consortium
7 Web site at <http://www.unicode.org>.
- 7 • X'8001' – The sequence is UCA400_NO, which implements the UCA (Unicode
7 Collation Algorithm) based on the Unicode Standard version 4.00, with
7 normalization implicitly set to ON.
- 7 • X'8002' – The sequence is UCA400_LTH, which implements the UCA (Unicode
7 Collation Algorithm) based on the Unicode Standard version 4.00, and sorts all
7 Thai characters as per the Royal Thai Dictionary order.
- 7 • X'8003' – The sequence is UCA400_LSK, which implements the UCA (Unicode
7 Collation Algorithm) based on the Unicode Standard version 4.00, and sorts all
7 Slovakian characters properly.

7 If you use this internal type information, you need to consider byte reversal when
7 retrieving information for a database on a different platform.

7 You can specify the collating sequence at database creation time.

8 Automatic setting of default prefetch size and update defaults

8 Starting with DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8.2, you can use
8 AUTOMATIC prefetch size for a table space. DB2 UDB automatically updates the
8 prefetch size when the number of containers changes for the table space.

8 The syntax of the DB2_PARALLEL_IO registry variable is expanded to recognize
8 containers with different I/O parallelism characteristics. Through the expanded
8 syntax, containers for different table spaces can have different I/O parallelism
8 characteristics. The I/O parallelism characteristic of each table space is used when
8 a prefetch size of AUTOMATIC is specified for the table space. If the
8 DB2_PARALLEL_IO registry variable is enabled but the expanded syntax
8 identifying specific I/O parallelism characteristics for table spaces is not used, a
8 default level of parallelism is assumed. The default level is RAID 5 (6+1).

8 The prefetch size information used by the optimizer is refreshed only when an
8 ALTER TABLESPACE statement that changes the prefetch size of a table space or
8 changes the number of containers (using ADD/DROP/BEGIN NEW STRIPE
8 SET/ADD TO NEW STRIPE SET) is issued. If the number of physical disks per
8 container registry settings changes, an **ALTER TABLESPACE <table space name>**
8 **PREFETCHSIZE AUTOMATIC** statement should be issued to refresh the
8 optimizer information (unless an ALTER TABLESPACE statement that refreshes the
8 optimizer information is already issued).

8 If a table space is redirected or restored to use a different number of containers,
8 refresh the optimizer information by issuing an **ALTER TABLESPACE <table**

8 **space name**> **PREFETCHSIZE AUTOMATIC** statement. If there are multiple
 8 stripe sets within a table space, the maximum number of containers among the
 8 stripe sets is used to calculate the prefetch size. If the calculated prefetch size
 8 exceeds the maximum size (32 767 pages), the largest multiple of the number of
 8 containers that is smaller than the maximum is used as the prefetch size.

8 In a DB2 UDB Enterprise Server Edition environment, if a table space uses an
 8 AUTOMATIC prefetch size, the prefetch size might be different on different
 8 database partitions. This situation can exist because different database partitions
 8 can have different numbers of containers used for calculating the prefetch size. To
 8 generate the query access plan, the optimizer uses the prefetch size from the first
 8 partition in a database partition group.

Administration: Planning

Range-clustered tables

9 A range-clustered table cannot be created in a database having more than one
 9 partition.

Catalog table space design

9 When creating a database, three table spaces are defined, including the
 9 SYSCATSPACE table space for the system catalog tables. The page size that
 9 becomes the default for all table spaces is set when the database is created. If a
 9 page size greater than 4096 or 4 K is chosen, the page size for the catalog tables is
 9 restricted to a row size that it would have if the catalog table space had a page size
 9 of 4 K. The default database page size is stored as an informational database
 9 configuration parameter called *pagesize*.

Supported territory codes and code pages

8 In Appendix B, “National language support (NLS)” in *Administration Guide:*
 8 *Planning*, the topic called “Supported territory codes and code pages” has tables
 8 for each territory. Two tables require updates:

China (PRC), territory identifier: CN

8 The code page for the Linux GBK row in the “China (PRC), territory identifier:
 8 CN” table should be changed from 1383 to 1386.

8 That is, the row should now read:

8 1386 D-4 GBK 86 zh_CN.GBK Linux

Japan, territory identifier: JP

8 The table for “Japan, territory identifier: JP” has been revised.

8 The following locale name should be removed:

8 954 D-1 eucJP 81 japanese Solaris

8 Here is the revised table:

8 *Table 14. Japan, territory identifier: JP*

Code page	Group	Code set	Territory code	Locale	Operating system
932	D-1	IBM-932	81	Ja_JP	AIX
943	D-1	IBM-943	81	Ja_JP	AIX

Table 14. Japan, territory identifier: JP (continued)

Code page	Group	Code set	Territory code	Locale	Operating system
954	D-1	IBM-eucJP	81	ja_JP	AIX
1208	N-1	UTF-8	81	JA_JP	AIX
930	D-1	IBM-930	81	-	Host
939	D-1	IBM-939	81	-	Host
5026	D-1	IBM-5026	81	-	Host
5035	D-1	IBM-5035	81	-	Host
1390	D-1		81	-	Host
1399	D-1		81	-	Host
954	D-1	eucJP	81	ja_JP.eucJP	HP-UX
5039	D-1	SJIS	81	ja_JP.SJIS	HP-UX
954	D-1	EUC-JP	81	ja_JP	Linux
932	D-1	IBM-932	81	-	OS/2 [®]
942	D-1	IBM-942	81	-	OS/2
943	D-1	IBM-943	81	-	OS/2
954	D-1	eucJP	81	ja	SCO
954	D-1	eucJP	81	ja_JP	SCO
954	D-1	eucJP	81	ja_JP.EUC	SCO
954	D-1	eucJP	81	ja_JP.eucJP	SCO
943	D-1	IBM-943	81	ja_JP.PCK	Solaris
954	D-1	eucJP	81	ja	Solaris
1208	N-1	UTF-8	81	ja_JP.UTF-8	Solaris
943	D-1	IBM-943	81	-	Windows
1394	D-1		81	-	

XA function supported by DB2 Universal Database

DB2 Universal Database (UDB) supports the XA91 specification defined in *X/Open CAE Specification Distributed Transaction Processing: The XA Specification*, with the following exceptions:

- Asynchronous services

The XA specification allows the interface to use asynchronous services, so that the result of a request can be checked at a later time. The database manager requires that the requests be invoked in synchronous mode.

- Registration

The XA interface allows two ways to register an RM: static registration and dynamic registration. DB2 UDB supports both dynamic and static registration. DB2 UDB provides two switches:

- `db2xa_switch` for dynamic registration
- `db2xa_switch_static` for static registration

- Association migration

DB2 UDB does not support transaction migration between threads of control.

XA switch usage and location

As required by the XA interface, the database manager provides a `db2xa_switch` and a `db2xa_switch_static` external C variable of type `xa_switch_t` to return the XA switch structure to the TM. Other than the addresses of various XA functions, the following fields are returned:

Field	Value
-------	-------

7 **name** The product name of the database manager. For example, DB2
7 UDB for AIX.

7 **flags** For *db2xa_switch* TMREGISTER | TMNOMIGRATE is set
7 Explicitly states that DB2 UDB uses dynamic registration, and that
7 the TM should not use association migration. Implicitly states that
7 asynchronous operation is not supported.
7 For *db2xa_switch_static* TMNOMIGRATE is set
7 Explicitly states that DB2 UDB uses dynamic registration, and that
7 the TM should not use association migration. Implicitly states that
7 asynchronous operation is not supported.

7 **version** Must be zero.

Using the DB2 Universal Database XA switch

The XA architecture requires that a Resource Manager (RM) provide a *switch* that gives the XA Transaction Manager (TM) access to the RM's **xa_** routines. An RM switch uses a structure called *xa_switch_t*. The switch contains the RM's name, non-NULL pointers to the RM's XA entry points, a flag, and a version number.

Linux- and UNIX-based systems: The switch for DB2 Universal Database (UDB) can be obtained through either of the following two ways:

- Through one additional level of indirection. In a C program, this can be accomplished by defining the macro:

```
#define db2xa_switch (*db2xa_switch)
#define db2xa_switch_static (*db2xa_switch)
```

prior to using *db2xa_switch* or *db2xa_switch_static*.

- By calling **db2xacic** or **db2xacicst**

DB2 UDB provides these APIs, which return the address of the *db2xa_switch* or the *db2xa_switch_static* structure. This function is prototyped as:

```
struct xa_switch_t * SQL_API_FN db2xacic( )
struct xa_switch_t * SQL_API_FN db2xacicst( )
```

With either method, you must link your application with `libdb2`.

Windows NT: The pointer to the *xa_switch* structure, *db2xa_switch*, or *db2xa_switch_static* is exported as DLL data. This implies that a Windows NT application using this structure must reference it in one of three ways:

- Through one additional level of indirection. In a C program, this can be accomplished by defining the macro:

```
#define db2xa_switch (*db2xa_switch)
#define db2xa_switch_static (*db2xa_switch)
```

prior to using *db2xa_switch* or *db2xa_switch_static*.

- If using the Microsoft Visual C++ compiler, *db2xa_switch* or *db2xa_switch_static* can be defined as:

```
extern __declspec(dllimport) struct xa_switch_t db2xa_switch
extern __declspec(dllimport) struct xa_switch_t db2xa_switch_static
```

- By calling **db2xacic** or **db2xacicst**

DB2 UDB provides this API, which returns the address of the *db2xa_switch* or *db2xa_switch_static* structure. This function is prototyped as:

```
struct xa_switch_t * SQL_API_FN db2xacic( )
struct xa_switch_t * SQL_API_FN db2xacicst( )
```

7 With any of these methods, you must link your application with `db2api.lib`.

7 **Example C Code:** The following code illustrates the different ways in which the
7 `db2xa_switch` or `db2xa_switch_static` can be accessed via a C program on any DB2
7 UDB platform. Be sure to link your application with the appropriate library.

```
7 #include <stdio.h>
7 #include <xa.h>
7
7 struct xa_switch_t * SQL_API_FN db2xacic( );
7
7 #ifdef DECLSPEC_DEFN
7 extern __declspec(dllimport) struct xa_switch_t db2xa_switch;
7 #else
7 #define db2xa_switch (*db2xa_switch)
7 extern struct xa_switch_t db2xa_switch;
7 #endif
7
7 main( )
7 {
7     struct xa_switch_t *foo;
7     printf ( "%s \n", db2xa_switch.name );
7     foo = db2xacic();
7     printf ( "%s \n", foo->name );
7     return ;
7 }
```

8 Updated TPM and `tp_mon_name` values for `xa_open` string 8 formats

8 The Internal settings column in the following table has been updated to reflect
8 settings for the thread of control (TOC).

8 TOC is the entity to which all DB2 UDB XA connections are bound:

- 8 • When set to a value of T, all DB2 UDB XA connections formed under a
8 particular OS thread are unique to that thread. Multiple threads cannot share
8 DB2 UDB connections. Each OS thread has to form its own set of DB2 UDB XA
8 connections.
- 8 • When set to a value of P, all DB2 UDB XA connections are unique to the OS
8 Process and all XA connections can be shared between OS threads.

8 *Table 15. Valid values for TPM and `tp_mon_name`*

8 TPM value	8 TP monitor product	8 Internal settings
8 CICS®	8 IBM TxSeries CICS	8 AXLIB=libEncServer (for Windows) 8 =/usr/lpp/encina/lib/libEncServer 8 (for Linux and UNIX systems) 8 HOLD_CURSOR=T 8 CHAIN_END=T 8 SUSPEND_CURSOR=F 8 TOC=T
8 ENCINA	8 IBM TxSeries Encina® 8 monitor	8 AXLIB=libEncServer (for Windows) 8 =/usr/lpp/encina/lib/libEncServer 8 (for Linux and UNIX systems) 8 HOLD_CURSOR=F 8 CHAIN_END=T 8 SUSPEND_CURSOR=F 8 TOC=T

Table 15. Valid values for TPM and tp_mon_name (continued)

TPM value	TP monitor product	Internal settings
MQ	IBM MQSeries®	AXLIB=mqmax (for Windows) =/usr/mqm/lib/libmqmax_r.a (for AIX threaded applications) =/usr/mqm/lib/libmqmax.a (for AIX non-threaded applications) =/opt/mqm/lib/libmqmax.so (for Solaris) =/opt/mqm/lib/libmqmax_r.sl (for HP threaded applications) =/opt/mqm/lib/libmqmax.sl (for HP non-threaded applications) =/opt/mqm/lib/libmqmax_r.so (for Linux threaded applications) =/opt/mqm/lib/libmqmax.so (for Linux non-threaded applications) HOLD_CURSOR=F CHAIN_END=F SUSPEND_CURSOR=F TOC=P
CB	IBM Component Broker	AXLIB=somtrx1i (for Windows) =libsomtrx1 (for Linux and UNIX systems) HOLD_CURSOR=F CHAIN_END=T SUSPEND_CURSOR=F TOC=T
SF	IBM San Francisco	AXLIB=ibmsfDB2 HOLD_CURSOR=F CHAIN_END=T SUSPEND_CURSOR=F TOC=T
TUXEDO	BEA Tuxedo	AXLIB=libtux HOLD_CURSOR=F CHAIN_END=F SUSPEND_CURSOR=F TOC=T
MTS	Microsoft Transaction Server	It is not necessary to configure DB2 UDB for MTS. MTS is automatically detected by DB2 UDB's ODBC driver.
JTA	Java Transaction API	It is not necessary to configure DB2 UDB for Enterprise Java Servers (EJS) such as IBM WebSphere. DB2 UDB's JDBC driver automatically detects this environment. Therefore this TPM value is ignored.

Activating conversion tables for code pages 923 and 924

The following table contains a list of all the code page conversion table files that are associated with code pages 923 and 924. Each file is of the form XXXXYYYY.cnv or ibmZZZZZ.ucs, where XXXXX is the source code page number and YYYY is the target code page number. The file ibmZZZZZ.ucs supports conversion between code page ZZZZZ and Unicode.

Procedure:

To activate a particular code page conversion table, rename or copy that conversion table file to its new name as shown in the second column.

For example, to support the euro symbol when connecting a 8859-1/15 (Latin 1/9) client to a Windows 1252 database, you need to rename or copy the following code page conversion table files in the `sqllib/conv/` directory:

- 09231252.cnv to 08191252.cnv
- 12520923.cnv to 12520819.cnv
- ibm00923.ucs to ibm00819.ucs

Table 16. Conversion table files for code pages 923 and 924

923 and 924 conversion table files in the <code>sqllib/conv/</code> directory	New name
04370923.cnv	04370819.cnv
08500923.cnv	08500819.cnv
08600923.cnv	08600819.cnv
08630923.cnv	08630819.cnv
09230437.cnv	08190437.cnv
09230850.cnv	08190850.cnv
09230860.cnv	08190860.cnv
09231043.cnv	08191043.cnv
09231051.cnv	08191051.cnv
09231114.cnv	08191114.cnv
09231252.cnv	08191252.cnv
09231275.cnv	08191275.cnv
09241252.cnv	10471252.cnv
10430923.cnv	10430819.cnv
10510923.cnv	10510819.cnv
11140923.cnv	11140819.cnv
12520923.cnv	12520819.cnv
12750923.cnv	12750819.cnv
ibm00923.ucs	ibm00819.ucs

Conversion table files for euro-enabled code pages

The following tables list the conversion tables that have been enhanced to support the euro currency symbol. If you want to disable euro symbol support, download the conversion table file indicated in the column titled "Conversion table files".

Arabic:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
864, 17248	1046, 9238	08641046.cnv, 10460864.cnv, IBM00864.ucs
864, 17248	1256, 5352	08641256.cnv, 12560864.cnv, IBM00864.ucs
864, 17248	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM00864.ucs

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
1046, 9238	864, 17248	10460864.cnv, 08641046.cnv, IBM01046.ucs
1046, 9238	1089	10461089.cnv, 10891046.cnv, IBM01046.ucs
1046, 9238	1256, 5352	10461256.cnv, 12561046.cnv, IBM01046.ucs
1046, 9238	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM01046.ucs
1089	1046, 9238	10891046.cnv, 10461089.cnv
1256, 5352	864, 17248	12560864.cnv, 08641256.cnv, IBM01256.ucs
1256, 5352	1046, 9238	12561046.cnv, 10461256.cnv, IBM01256.ucs
1256, 5352	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM01256.ucs

Baltic:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
921, 901	1257	09211257.cnv, 12570921.cnv, IBM00921.ucs
921, 901	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM00921.ucs
1257, 5353	921, 901	12570921.cnv, 09211257.cnv, IBM01257.ucs
1257, 5353	922, 902	12570922.cnv, 09221257.cnv, IBM01257.ucs
1257, 5353	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM01257.ucs

Belarus:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
1131, 849	1251, 5347	11311251.cnv, 12511131.cnv
1131, 849	1283	11311283.cnv

Cyrillic:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
855, 872	866, 808	08550866.cnv, 08660855.cnv
855, 872	1251, 5347	08551251.cnv, 12510855.cnv
866, 808	855, 872	08660855.cnv, 08550866.cnv
866, 808	1251, 5347	08661251.cnv, 12510866.cnv
1251, 5347	855, 872	12510855.cnv, 08551251.cnv, IBM01251.ucs
1251, 5347	866, 808	12510866.cnv, 08661251.cnv, IBM01251.ucs

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
1251, 5347	1124	12511124.cnv, 11241251.cnv, IBM01251.ucs
1251, 5347	1125, 848	12511125.cnv, 11251251.cnv, IBM01251.ucs
1251, 5347	1131, 849	12511131.cnv, 11311251.cnv, IBM01251.ucs
1251, 5347	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM01251.ucs

Estonia:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
922, 902	1257	09221257.cnv, 12570922.cnv, IBM00922.ucs
922, 902	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM00922.ucs

Greek:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
813, 4909	869, 9061	08130869.cnv, 08690813.cnv, IBM00813.ucs
813, 4909	1253, 5349	08131253.cnv, 12530813.cnv, IBM00813.ucs
813, 4909	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM00813.ucs
869, 9061	813, 4909	08690813.cnv, 08130869.cnv
869, 9061	1253, 5349	08691253.cnv, 12530869.cnv
1253, 5349	813, 4909	12530813.cnv, 08131253.cnv, IBM01253.ucs
1253, 5349	869, 9061	12530869.cnv, 08691253.cnv, IBM01253.ucs
1253, 5349	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM01253.ucs

Hebrew:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
856, 9048	862, 867	08560862.cnv, 08620856.cnv, IBM0856.ucs
856, 9048	916	08560916.cnv, 09160856.cnv, IBM0856.ucs
856, 9048	1255, 5351	08561255.cnv, 12550856.cnv, IBM0856.ucs
856, 9048	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM0856.ucs
862, 867	856, 9048	08620856.cnv, 08560862.cnv, IBM00862.ucs

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
862, 867	916	08620916.cnv, 09160862.cnv, IBM00862.ucs
862, 867	1255, 5351	08621255.cnv, 12550862.cnv, IBM00862.ucs
862, 867	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM00862.ucs
916	856, 9048	09160856.cnv, 08560916.cnv
916	862, 867	09160862.cnv, 08620916.cnv
1255, 5351	856, 9048	12550856.cnv, 08561255.cnv, IBM01255.ucs
1255, 5351	862, 867	12550862.cnv, 08621255.cnv, IBM01255.ucs
1255, 5351	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM01255.ucs

Latin-1:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
437	850, 858	04370850.cnv, 08500437.cnv
850, 858	437	08500437.cnv, 04370850.cnv
850, 858	860	08500860.cnv, 08600850.cnv
850, 858	1114, 5210	08501114.cnv, 11140850.cnv
850, 858	1275	08501275.cnv, 12750850.cnv
860	850, 858	08600850.cnv, 08500860.cnv
1275	850, 858	12750850.cnv, 08501275.cnv

Latin-2:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
852, 9044	1250, 5346	08521250.cnv, 12500852.cnv
1250, 5346	852, 9044	12500852.cnv, 08521250.cnv, IBM01250.ucs
1250, 5346	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	IBM01250.ucs

Simplified Chinese:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
837, 935, 1388	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	1388ucs2.cnv
1386	1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	1386ucs2.cnv, ucs21386.cnv

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
1200, 1208, 13488, 17584	1386	ucs21386.cnv, 1386ucs2.cnv

Vietnamese:

Database server CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Database client CCSIDs/CPGIDs	Conversion table files
1258, 5354	1129, 1163	12581129.cnv

API Reference

SYNCPPOINT option support

The SYNCPPOINT option for the sqlesetc, sqleqryc, and sqlaprep APIs is ignored as of Version 8; it is available only for backward compatibility.

New field for SQLEDBDESC structure

In the sqlecrea API, a new field has been added to support Direct I/O.

Field name

Unsigned char sqlfscaching

Description

File system caching

Values

0 File system caching is ON for the current table space

1 File system caching is OFF for the current table space

other File system caching is ON for the current table space

Correction to new field in the SQLB-TBSPQRY-DATA structure

A new field, *unsigned char fsCaching*, has been added in the SQLB-TBSPQRY-DATA structure. This new field supports Direct I/O. Although the size of the reserved bit is documented as 32-bit, the correct size is 31-bit.

Application development: Building and Running Applications

Linux supported development software

For installation details, refer to “Linux 2.6 kernel installation images” on page 3 in the *DB2 UDB Version 8.2.2 Release Notes (New in this release section)*.

The following tables describe the DB2 Linux architecture support as of the release of FixPak 9. Check the preceding validate Web site for updates to this support:

<http://www.ibm.com/db2/linux/validate>

Table 17. Linux on Intel® x86 (32-bit)

Distributions	Kernel	Library	Comments
Conectiva Linux Enterprise Edition (CLEE)	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	Powered by United Linux 1.0

Table 17. Linux on Intel® x86 (32-bit) (continued)

Distributions	Kernel	Library	Comments
LINX Rocky Secure Server 2.1	2.4.21	glibc 2.2.5	
Red Flag Advanced Server 4.0	2.4.21-as.2	glibc 2.2.93-5	
Red Flag Function Server 4.0	2.4.20-8smp	glibc 2.2.93-5	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 AS/ES/WS	2.4.9-e16	glibc 2.2.4	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 3 AS/ES/WS	2.4.21-7.EL	glibc-2.3.2-95.3	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 4	2.6.9	glibc-2.3.3	Also requires the compat-libstdc++-33 package
SCO Linux 4.0	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	Powered by United Linux 1.0
SuSE Pro 8.0	2.4.18	glibc 2.2.5	
SuSE Pro 8.1	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 7	2.4.7	glibc 2.2.2	
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 8	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	Validated up to SuSE Service Pack 2 level
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 9	2.6.5	glibc-2.3.3	
Turbolinux 7 Server	2.4.9	glibc 2.2.4	
Turbolinux 8 Server	2.4.18-5	glibc 2.2.5	
Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	
United Linux 1.0	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	

Table 18. Linux on Intel x86 (32-bit) non-enterprise distributions (no longer supported by the vendor)

Distributions	Kernel	Library	Comments
Red Hat 7.2	2.4.9-34	glibc 2.2.4	
Red Hat 7.3	2.4.18	glibc 2.2.5	
Red Hat 8.0	2.4.18-14	glibc 2.2.93-5	
SuSE 7.3	2.4.10	glibc 2.2.4	

Table 19. Linux on s/390 and zSeries® (31-bit kernel version supported on s/390; 64-bit on zSeries)

Distributions	Kernel	Library	Comments
Red Hat 7.2	2.4.9-38	glibc 2.2.4	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 4	2.6.9	glibc-2.3.3	Also requires the compat-libstdc++-33 package

Table 19. Linux on s/390 and zSeries® (31-bit kernel version supported on s/390; 64-bit on zSeries) (continued)

Distributions	Kernel	Library	Comments
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 7	2.4.7-58	glibc 2.2.4	compat.rpm contains libstdc++ 6.1. Use JDK 1.3.1 SR 1 for Java™
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 8	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	Powered by United Linux 1.0
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 9	2.6.5	glibc-2.3.3	
Turbo Linux Enterprise Server (TLES) 8	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	Powered by United Linux 1.0
United Linux 1.0	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	

Table 20. Linux on x86-64

Distributions	Kernel	Library	Comments
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 3 AS/ES/WS	2.4.21-7.EL	glibc-2.3.2-95.3	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 4	2.6.9	glibc-2.3.3	Also requires the compat-libstdc++-33 package
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 8.0	2.4.19-SMP	glibc 2.2.5-16	
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 9	2.6.5	glibc-2.3.3	

Table 21. Linux on POWER™ (iSeries and pSeries®)

Distributions	Kernel	Library	Comments
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 3 AS	2.4.21-7.EL	glibc-2.3.2-95.3	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 4	2.6.9	glibc-2.3.3	Also requires the compat-libstdc++-33 package
SuSE Enterprise Server (SLES) 8	2.4.19-16	glibc 2.2.5	Powered by United Linux 1.0
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 9	2.6.5	glibc-2.3.3	
Turbolinux Enterprise Server 8	2.4.19-16	glibc 2.2.5	Powered by United Linux 1.0
United Linux 1.0	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	

Table 22. Linux on IA64

Distributions	Kernel	Library	Comments
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1 AS/ES/WS	2.4.18-e.12smp	glibc	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 3 AS/ES/WS	2.4.21-7.EL	glibc-2.3.2-95.3	

Table 22. Linux on IA64 (continued)

Distributions	Kernel	Library	Comments
Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 4	2.6.9	glibc-2.3.3	Also requires the compat-libstdc++-33 package
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 8	2.4.19-SMP	glibc 2.2.5	Powered by United Linux 1.0
SuSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 9	2.6.5	glibc-2.3.3	
United Linux 1.0	2.4.19	glibc 2.2.5	

DB2 UDB for Linux 2.6 kernel-based Linux distributions for Intel x86 supports the following programming languages and compilers:

C GNU/Linux gcc version 3.3

C++ GNU/Linux g++ version 3.3

COBOL

Micro Focus COBOL Server Express Version 2.2 with Service Pack 1

Java IBM Developer Kit and Runtime Environment for Linux, Java 2 Technology Edition, Version 1.3.1 and 1.4.1 Service Release 1, 32-bit version

Note: DB2 UDB installs the latest supported version of the developer kit if it is not already installed, unless the DB2 UDB installation is an update of a previous DB2 UDB Version 8 installation. If a previous DB2 UDB Version 8 installation is being updated, the supported developer kit must be manually installed from the CD-ROM.

Perl Perl 5.004_04 or later, DBI 0.93 or later

PHP PHP 4.3.4 or later

REXX Object REXX Interpreter for Linux Version 2.1

A 32-bit instance on **DB2 UDB for 2.6 kernel-based Linux distributions on x86-64** supports the following programming languages and compilers:

C GNU/Linux gcc version 3.3

Note: The "-m32" compiler option must be used to generate 32-bit applications or routines (stored procedures and user-defined functions).

C++ GNU/Linux g++ version 3.3

Notes:

1. These versions of the GNU/Linux g++ compiler do not accept integer parameters for some fstream functions. Consult the compiler documentation for more information.
2. The "-m32" compiler option must be used to generate 32-bit applications or routines (stored procedures and user-defined functions).

Java IBM Developer Kit and Runtime Environment for Linux x86, Java 2 Technology Edition, Version 1.3.1 Service Release 4, 32-bit version, and Version 1.4.1 Service Release 1, 32-bit version.

9 **Note:** DB2 UDB installs the latest supported version of the developer kit if
9 it is not already installed, unless the DB2 UDB installation is an
9 update of a previous DB2 UDB Version 8 installation. If a previous
9 DB2 UDB Version 8 installation is being updated, the supported
9 developer kit must be manually installed from the CD-ROM.

9 **Perl** Perl 5.8

6 **PHP** PHP 4.3.4 or later

9 A 64-bit instance on **DB2 UDB for 2.6 kernel-based distributions for Linux on**
9 **x86-64** supports the following programming languages and compilers:

9 **C** GNU/Linux gcc version 3.3

9 **C++** GNU/Linux g++ version 3.3

9 **Note:** These versions of the GNU/Linux g++ compiler do not accept
9 integer parameters for some fstream functions. Consult the compiler
9 documentation for more information.

9 **Java** DB2 UDB does not currently support any 64-bit Java Developer Kit for
9 Linux on x86-64.

9 **Perl** Perl 5.8

9 **PHP** PHP 4.3.4 or later

7 **Customizing precompile and bind options for SQL procedures**

7 The precompile and bind options for SQL procedures can be customized by setting
7 the instance-wide DB2 registry variable, DB2_SQLROUTINE_PREPOPTS with the
7 command:

7 db2set DB2_SQLROUTINE_PREPOPTS=<options>

7 In addition to the options documented at Version 8.2, the REOPT option is
7 allowed:

7 BLOCKING {UNAMBIG | ALL | NO}
7 DATETIME {DEF | USA | EUR | ISO | JIS | LOC}
7 DEGREE {1 | degree-of-parallelism | ANY}
7 DYNAMICRULES {BIND | RUN}
7 EXPLAIN {NO | YES | ALL}
7 EXPLSNAP {NO | YES | ALL}
7 FEDERATED {NO | YES}
7 INSERT {DEF | BUF}
7 ISOLATION {CS | RR | UR | RS | NC}
7 QUERYOPT optimization-level
7 REOPT {ALWAYS | NONE | ONCE}
7 VALIDATE {RUN | BIND}

7 **C/C++ compile option required (Linux on POWER 64-bit)**

7 The compiler option "-m64" is required when using gcc/g++ to build C/C++
7 applications and routines for a 64-bit instance on DB2 Universal Database for
7 Linux on POWER.

9 The compiler option "-q64" is required when using xlc/xlC to build C/C++
9 applications and routines for a 64-bit instance on DB2 Universal Database for
9 Linux on POWER.

7 **Compile and link command for Micro Focus COBOL stored procedures (HP-UX)**

7 The compile and link command shown in the DB2 Universal Database Version 8.2
7 documentation for building stored procedures using Micro Focus COBOL on
7 HP-UX is incorrect. The compile command contained in the actual script
7 sqllib/samples/cobol_mf/bldrtn is correct. The compile and link commands are
7 now combined into one single command, using the -y option to specify that the
7 desired output is a shared library.

7 **Minimum supported version of Micro Focus COBOL (HP-UX)**

7 The minimum supported version of the Micro Focus COBOL compiler and run
7 time on HP-UX is *Micro Focus Server Express 2.2 - Service Pack 1* plus Fix Pack
7 *Fixpack22.02_14 for HP-UX PA-RISC 11.x (32/64bit)*. This Fix Pack is available from
7 the Micro Focus Support Line Web site at <http://supportline.microfocus.com> .

7 **Setting environment variables for Micro Focus COBOL stored procedures (Windows)**

7 In order to run Micro Focus COBOL external routines on Windows, it is necessary
7 to ensure that the Micro Focus COBOL environment variables are permanently set
7 as system variables.

7 **Procedure:**

7 To set environment variables to system variables:

- 7 1. Open the Control Panel
- 7 2. Select **System**
- 7 3. Select the **Advanced** tab
- 7 4. Click **Environment Variables**
- 7 5. Add the variables to the **System variables** list

7 Setting the environment variables in the **User variables** list, at a command prompt,
7 or in a script is insufficient.

Application development: Call Level Interface (CLI)

9 **Additional environment attributes**

9 In addition to being CLI connection attributes, the following attributes are also
9 supported as CLI environment attributes:

- 9 • SQL_ATTR_INFO_ACCTSTR
- 9 • SQL_ATTR_INFO_APPLNAME
- 9 • SQL_ATTR_INFO_USERID
- 9 • SQL_ATTR_INFO_WRKSTNNAME

9 For information on these attributes, refer to the CLI connection attributes
9 documentation in the DB2 Information Center or in the *CLI Guide and Reference*
9 *Volume 2* .

Dynamic scrollable cursors requirement

To perform updates and deletions on rows in a dynamic scrollable cursor's result set, the UPDATE or DELETE statement must include all the columns of at least one unique key in the base table. This can be the primary key or any other unique key.

ReceiveTimeout CLI/ODBC configuration keyword

Keyword description:

Specify the time in seconds to wait for a reply from the server on an established connection before terminating the attempt and generating a communication timeout error.

db2cli.ini keyword syntax:

ReceiveTimeout = 0 | 1 | 2 | ... | 32767

Default setting:

The client waits indefinitely for a reply from the server on an established connection.

Equivalent statement attribute:

SQL_ATTR_RECEIVE_TIMEOUT

Usage notes:

The default value of 0 indicates that the client waits indefinitely for a reply. The receive timeout has no effect during connection establishment; it is only supported for TCP/IP and is ignored for any other protocol.

SQL_ATTR_RECEIVE_TIMEOUT statement attribute

SQL_ATTR_RECEIVE_TIMEOUT (DB2 CLI v8)

A 32-bit integer value that is the number of seconds a client waits for a reply from a server on an established connection before terminating the attempt and generating a communication timeout error. The default value of 0 indicates the client waits indefinitely for a reply. The receive timeout has no effect during connection establishment; it is only supported for TCP/IP, and is ignored for any other protocol. Supported values are integers from 0 to 32767.

Reopt CLI/ODBC configuration keyword

Keyword description:

Enable query optimization or reoptimization of SQL statements that have special registers or parameter markers.

db2cli.ini keyword syntax:

Reopt = 2 | 3 | 4

Default setting:

No query optimization occurs at query execution time. The default estimates chosen by the compiler are used for special registers or parameter markers.

Equivalent statement attribute:

SQL_ATTR_REOPT

Usage notes:

Optimization occurs by using the values available at query execution time

9 for the special registers or parameter markers instead of the default
9 estimates that are chosen by the compiler. The valid values of the keyword
9 are:

- 9 • 2 = SQL_REOPT_NONE. This is the default. No query optimization
9 occurs at query execution time. The default estimates chosen by the
9 compiler are used for the special registers or parameter markers. The
9 default "NULLID" package set is used to execute dynamic SQL
9 statements.
- 9 • 3 = SQL_REOPT_ONCE. Query optimization occurs once at query
9 execution time, when the query is executed for the first time. The
9 "NULLIDR1" package set, which is bound with the REOPT ONCE bind
9 option, is used.
- 9 • 4 = SQL_REOPT_ALWAYS. Query optimization or reoptimization
9 occurs at query execution time every time the query is executed. The
9 "NULLIDRA" package set, which is bound with the REOPT ALWAYS
9 bind option, is used.

9 The "NULLIDR1" and "NULLIDRA" are reserved package set names, and
9 when used, REOPT ONCE and REOPT ALWAYS are implied respectively.
9 These package sets have to be explicitly created with the following
9 commands:

```
9 db2 bind db2clipk.bnd collection NULLIDR1  
9 db2 bind db2clipk.bnd collection NULLIDRA
```

9 If both the Reopt and CurrentPackageSet keywords are specified,
9 CurrentPackageSet takes precedence.

9 SQL_ATTR_REOPT statement attribute

9 SQL_ATTR_REOPT (DB2 CLI v8)

9 A 32-bit integer value that enables query optimization for SQL statements
9 that contain special registers or parameter markers. Optimization occurs by
9 using the values available at query execution time for special registers or
9 parameter markers, instead of the default estimates that are chosen by the
9 compiler. The valid values of the attribute are:

- 9 • 2 = SQL_REOPT_NONE. This is the default. No query optimization
9 occurs at query execution time. The default estimates chosen by the
9 compiler are used for the special registers or parameter markers. The
9 default "NULLID" package set is used to execute dynamic SQL
9 statements.
- 9 • 3 = SQL_REOPT_ONCE. Query optimization occurs once at query
9 execution time, when the query is executed for the first time. The
9 "NULLIDR1" package set, which is bound with the REOPT ONCE bind
9 option, is used.
- 9 • 4 = SQL_REOPT_ALWAYS. Query optimization or reoptimization
9 occurs at query execution time every time the query is executed. The
9 "NULLIDRA" package set, which is bound with the REOPT ALWAYS
9 bind option, is used.

9 The "NULLIDR1" and "NULLIDRA" are reserved package set names, and
9 when used, REOPT ONCE and REOPT ALWAYS are implied respectively.
9 These package sets have to be explicitly created with these commands:

```
9 db2 bind db2clipk.bnd collection NULLIDR1  
9 db2 bind db2clipk.bnd collection NULLIDRA
```

SQL_ATTR_REOPT and SQL_ATTR_CURRENT_PACKAGE_SET are mutually exclusive, therefore, if one is set, the other is not allowed.

CurrentPackageSet CLI/ODBC configuration keyword

Keyword description:

Issues the SET CURRENT PACKAGESET statement after every connection.

db2cli.ini keyword syntax:

CurrentPackageSet = *schema name*

Default setting:

The clause is not appended.

Equivalent connection attribute:

SQL_ATTR_CURRENT_PACKAGE_SET

Usage notes:

This option issues the SET CURRENT PACKAGESET SQL statement with the CurrentPackageSet value after every connection to a database. By default this clause is not appended.

The SET CURRENT PACKAGESET SQL statement sets the schema name (collection identifier) that is used to select the package to use for subsequent SQL statements.

CLI/ODBC applications issue dynamic SQL statements. Using this option you can control the privileges used to run these statements:

- Choose a schema to use when running SQL statements from CLI/ODBC applications.
- Ensure the objects in the schema have the desired privileges and then rebind accordingly.
- Set the CurrentPackageSet option to this schema.

The SQL statements from the CLI/ODBC applications will now run under the specified schema and use the privileges defined there.

The following package set names are reserved: "NULLID ", "NULLIDR1", "NULLIDRA".

If both the Reopt and CurrentPackageSet keywords are specified, CurrentPackageSet takes precedence.

SQL_ATTR_CURRENT_PACKAGE_SET connection attribute

SQL_ATTR_CURRENT_PACKAGE_SET (DB2 CLI v5)

A null-terminated character string that indicates the schema name (collection identifier) that is used to select the package for subsequent SQL statements. Setting this attribute causes the SET CURRENT PACKAGESET SQL statement to be issued. If this attribute is set before a connection, the SET CURRENT PACKAGESET SQL statement will be issued at connection time.

CLI/ODBC applications issue dynamic SQL statements. Using this connection attribute, you can control the privileges used to run these statements:

- Choose a schema to use when running SQL statements from CLI/ODBC applications.
- Ensure the objects in the schema have the desired privileges and then rebind accordingly. This typically means binding the CLI packages

9 (sqllib/bnd/db2cli.lst) using the COLLECTION <collid> option. Refer to
9 the BIND command for further details.

- 9 • Set the CURRENTPACKAGESET option to this schema.

9 The SQL statements from the CLI/ODBC applications will now run under
9 the specified schema and use the privileges defined there.

9 Setting the CLI/ODBC configuration keyword CURRENTPACKAGESET is
9 an alternative method of specifying the schema name.

9 The following package set names are reserved: "NULLID ", "NULLIDR1",
9 "NULLIDRA".

9 SQL_ATTR_REOPT and SQL_ATTR_CURRENT_PACKAGE_SET are
9 mutually exclusive, therefore, if one is set, the other is not allowed.

7 **MapBigintCDefault CLI/ODBC configuration keyword**

7 **Keyword description:**

7 Specify the default C type of BIGINT columns and parameter markers.

7 **db2cli.ini keyword syntax:**

7 MapBigintCDefault = 0 | 1 | 2

7 **Default setting:**

7 The default C type representation for BIGINT data is SQL_C_BIGINT.

7 **Usage notes:**

7

7 MapBigintCDefault controls the C type that is used when SQL_C_DEFAULT is
7 specified for BIGINT columns and parameter markers. This keyword should be
7 used primarily with Microsoft applications, such as Microsoft Access, which cannot
7 handle 8-byte integers. Set MapBigintCDefault as follows:

- 7 • 0 - for the default SQL_C_BIGINT C type representation
- 7 • 1 - for an SQL_C_CHAR C type representation
- 7 • 2 - for an SQL_C_WCHAR C type representation

7 This keyword affects the behavior of CLI functions where SQL_C_DEFAULT might
7 be specified as a C type, such as SQLBindParameter(), SQLBindCol(), and
7 SQLGetData().

7 **DescribeOutputLevel CLI/ODBC configuration keyword**

7 **Keyword description:**

7 Set the level of output column describe information that is requested by
7 the CLI driver during prepare or describe requests.

7 **db2cli.ini keyword syntax:**

7 DescribeOutputLevel = 0 | 1 | 2 | 3

7 **Default setting:**

7 Request the describe information listed in level 2 of Table 23 on page 94.

7 **Usage notes:**

7

7 This keyword controls the amount of information the CLI driver requests on a
7 prepare or describe request. By default, when the server receives a describe
7 request, it returns the information contained in level 2 of Table 23 on page 94 for

the result set columns. An application, however, might not need all of this information or might need additional information.

Setting the DescribeOutputLevel keyword to a level that suits the needs of the client application might improve performance because the describe data transferred between the client and server is limited to the minimum amount that the application requires. If the DescribeOutputLevel setting is set too low, it might impact the functionality of the application (depending on the application's requirements). The CLI functions to retrieve the describe information might not fail in this case, but the information returned might be incomplete.

Supported settings for DescribeOutputLevel are:

- 0 - no describe information is returned to the client application
- 1 - describe information categorized in level 1 (see Table 23) is returned to the client application
- 2 - (default) describe information categorized in level 2 (see Table 23) is returned to the client application
- 3 - describe information categorized in level 3 (see Table 23) is returned to the client application

The following table lists the fields that form the describe information that the server returns when it receives a prepare or describe request. These fields are grouped into levels, and the DescribeOutputLevel CLI/ODBC configuration keyword controls which levels of describe information the CLI driver requests.

Note: Not all levels of describe information are supported by all DB2 servers. All levels of describe information are supported on the following DB2 servers: DB2 Universal Database (UDB) for Linux , UNIX, and Windows Version 8 and later, DB2 UDB for z/OS Version 8 and later, and DB2 UDB for iSeries Version 5 Release 3 and later. All other DB2 servers support only the 2 or 0 setting for DescribeOutputLevel.

Table 23. Levels of describe information

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
SQL_DESC_COUNT	all fields of level 1 and: SQL_DESC_NAME SQL_DESC_LABEL SQL_COLUMN_NAME SQL_DESC_UNNAMED SQL_DESC_TYPE_NAME SQL_DESC_DISTINCT_TYPE SQL_DESC_REFERENCE_TYPE SQL_DESC_STRUCTURED_TYPE SQL_DESC_USER_TYPE SQL_DESC_LOCAL_TYPE_NAME SQL_DESC_USER_DEFINED_ TYPE_CODE	all fields of levels 1 and 2 and: SQL_DESC_BASE_COLUMN_NAME SQL_DESC_UPDATABLE SQL_DESC_AUTO_UNIQUE_VALUE SQL_DESC_SCHEMA_NAME SQL_DESC_CATALOG_NAME SQL_DESC_TABLE_NAME SQL_DESC_BASE_TABLE_NAME
SQL_COLUMN_COUNT		
SQL_DESC_TYPE		
SQL_DESC_CONCISE_TYPE		
SQL_COLUMN_LENGTH		
SQL_DESC_OCTET_LENGTH		
SQL_DESC_LENGTH		
SQL_DESC_PRECISION		
SQL_COLUMN_PRECISION		
SQL_DESC_SCALE		
SQL_COLUMN_SCALE		
SQL_DESC_DISPLAY_SIZE		
SQL_DESC_NULLABLE		
SQL_COLUMN_NULLABLE		
SQL_DESC_UNSIGNED		
SQL_DESC_SEARCHABLE		
SQL_DESC_LITERAL_SUFFIX		
SQL_DESC_LITERAL_PREFIX		
SQL_DESC_CASE_SENSITIVE		
SQL_DESC_FIXED_PREC_SCALE		

OleDbReportIsLongForLongTypes CLI/ODBC configuration keyword**Keyword description:**

Makes OLE DB flag LONG data types with DBCOLUMNFLAGS_ISLONG.

db2cli.ini keyword syntax:

OleDbReportIsLongForLongTypes = 0 | 1

Equivalent statement attribute:

SQL_ATTR_REPORT_ISLONG_FOR_LONGTYPES_OLEDB

Default setting:

LONG types (LONG VARCHAR, LONG VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA, LONG VARGRAPHIC and LONG VARGRAPHIC FOR BIT DATA) do not have the DBCOLUMNFLAGS_ISLONG flag set, which may cause the columns to be used in the WHERE clause.

Usage notes:

OLE DB's client cursor engine and OLE DB .NET Data Provider's CommandBuilder generate update and delete statements based on column information provided by the IBM DB2 OLE DB Provider. If the generated statement contains a LONG type in the WHERE clause, the statement will fail because LONG types cannot be used in a search with an equality operator. Setting the keyword OleDbReportIsLongForLongTypes to 1 will make the IBM DB2 OLE DB Provider report LONG types (LONG VARCHAR, LONG VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA, LONG VARGRAPHIC and LONG VARGRAPHIC FOR BIT DATA) with the DBCOLUMNFLAGS_ISLONG flag set. This will prevent the long columns from being used in the WHERE clause.

OleDbSQLColumnsSortByOrdinal CLI/ODBC configuration keyword**Keyword description:**

Makes OLE DB's IDBSchemaRowset::GetRowset(DBSCHEMA_COLUMNS) return a row set sorted by the ORDINAL_POSITION column.

db2cli.ini keyword syntax:

OleDbSQLColumnsSortByOrdinal = 0 | 1

Equivalent statement attribute:

SQL_ATTR_SQLCOLUMNS_SORT_BY_ORDINAL_OLEDB

Default setting:

IDBSchemaRowset::GetRowset(DBSCHEMA_COLUMNS) returns the row set sorted by the columns TABLE_CATALOG, TABLE_SCHEMA, TABLE_NAME, COLUMN_NAME.

Usage notes:

The Microsoft OLE DB specification requires that IDBSchemaRowset::GetRowset(DBSCHEMA_COLUMNS) returns the row set sorted by the columns TABLE_CATALOG, TABLE_SCHEMA, TABLE_NAME, COLUMN_NAME. The IBM DB2 OLE DB Provider conforms to the specification.

8 However, applications that use the Microsoft ODBC Bridge provider (MSDASQL)
 8 have been typically coded to get the row set sorted by ORDINAL_POSITION.
 8 Setting the OleDbSQLColumnsSortByOrdinal keyword to 1 will make the provider
 8 return a row set sorted by ORDINAL_POSITION.

8 **DB2 Data Source property group for the IBM DB2 OLE DB** 8 **Provider**

8 The IBM DB2 OLE DB Provider has added a new property group: DB2 Data
 8 Source. The property set for DB2 Data Source is DBPROPSET_DB2DATASOURCE.

8 The GUID for the property set is
 8 {0x8a80412a,0x7d94,0x4fec,{0x87,0x3e,0x6c,0xd1,0xcd,0x42,0x0d,0xcd}}

8 DBPROPSET_DB2DATASOURCE has three properties:

- 8 • DB2PROP_REPORTISLONGFORLONGTYPES
- 8 • DB2PROP_RETURNCHARASWCHAR
- 8 • DB2PROP_SORTBYORDINAL

8 **DB2PROP_REPORTISLONGFORLONGTYPES:**

```
8 #define DB2PROP_REPORTISLONGFORLONGTYPES 4
8 Property group: DB2 Data Source
8 Property set: DB2PROPSET_DATASOURCE
8 Type: VT_BOOL
8 Typical R/W: R/W
8 Description: Report IsLong for Long Types
```

8 OLE DB's client cursor engine and OLE DB .NET Data Provider's
 8 CommandBuilder generate update and delete statements based on column
 8 information provided by the IBM DB2 OLE DB Provider. If the generated
 8 statement contains a LONG type in the WHERE clause, the statement will fail
 8 because LONG types cannot be used in a search with an equality operator.

8 *Table 24. DB2PROP_REPORTISLONGFORLONGTYPES values*

8 Values	8 Meaning
8 VARIANT_TRUE	8 Will make the IBM DB2 OLE DB Provider report LONG types 8 (LONG VARCHAR, LONG VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA, LONG 8 VARGRAPHIC, and LONG VARGRAPHIC FOR BIT DATA) with 8 the DBCOLUMNFLAGS_ISLONG flag set. This will prevent the 8 long columns from being used in the WHERE clause.
8 VARIANT_FALSE	8 DBCOLUMNFLAGS_ISLONG is not set for LONG VARCHAR, 8 LONG VARCHAR FOR BIT DATA, LONG VARGRAPHIC and 8 LONG VARGRAPHIC FOR BIT DATA. This is the default.

8 **DB2PROP_RETURNCHARASWCHAR:**

```
8 #define DB2PROP_RETURNCHARASWCHAR 2
8 Property group: DB2 Data Source
8 Property set: DB2PROPSET_DATASOURCE
8 Type: VT_BOOL
8 Typical R/W: R/W
8 Description: Return Char as WChar
```

8 *Table 25. DB2PROP_RETURNCHARASWCHAR values*

8 Values	8 Meaning
8 VARIANT_TRUE	8 OLE DB describes columns of type CHAR, VARCHAR, LONG 8 VARCHAR, or CLOB as DBTYPE_WSTR. The code page of data 8 implied in ISequentialStream will be UCS-2. This is the default.
8 VARIANT_FALSE	8 OLE DB describes columns of type CHAR, VARCHAR, LONG 8 VARCHAR, or CLOB as DBTYPE_STR. The code page of data 8 implied in ISequentialStream will be the local code page of the 8 client.

8 **DB2PROP_SORTBYORDINAL:**

8 #define DB2PROP_SORTBYORDINAL 3
8 Property group: DB2 Data Source
8 Property set: DB2PROPSET_DATASOURCE
8 Type: VT_BOOL
8 Typical R/W: R/W
8 Description: Sort By Ordinal

8 The Microsoft OLE DB specification requires that
8 IDBSchemaRowset::GetRowset(DBSCHEMA_COLUMNS) returns the row set
8 sorted by the columns TABLE_CATALOG, TABLE_SCHEMA, TABLE_NAME,
8 COLUMN_NAME. The IBM DB2 OLE DB Provider conforms to the specification.
8 However, applications that use the Microsoft ODBC Bridge provider (MSDASQL)
8 have been typically coded to get the row set sorted by ORDINAL_POSITION.

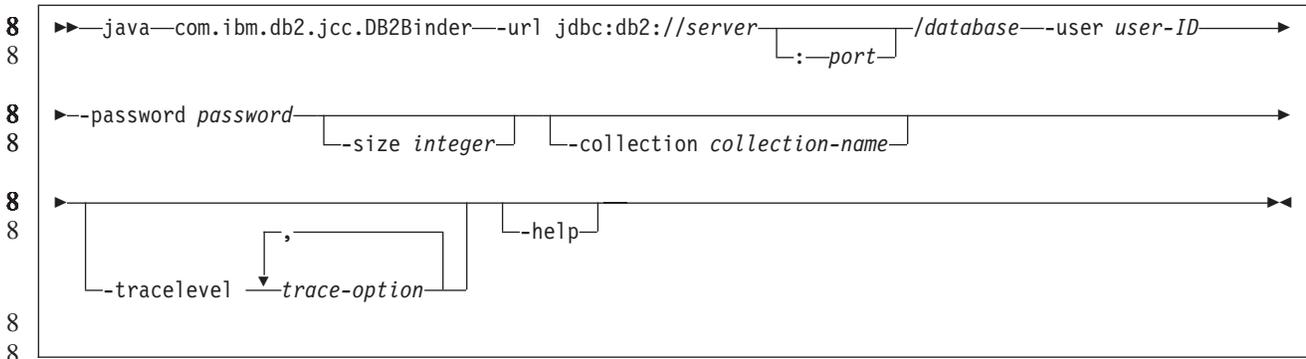
8 *Table 26. DB2PROP_SORTBYORDINAL values*

8 Values	8 Meaning
8 VARIANT_TRUE	8 Will make the provider return a row set sorted by 8 ORDINAL_POSITION.
8 VARIANT_FALSE	8 Will make the provider return a row set sorted by 8 TABLE_CATALOG, TABLE_SCHEMA, TABLE_NAME, 8 COLUMN_NAME. This is the default.

8 **Incorrect URL syntax in the DB2Binder syntax diagram**

8 In the topic "Installing the DB2 Universal JDBC Driver", the DB2Binder syntax
8 diagram incorrectly defines the URL syntax for the DB2 Universal JDBC Driver.
8 The correct representation of the URL syntax for DB2Binder is shown in the
8 following diagram:

8 **DB2Binder syntax:**
8



Rerouting DB2 Universal JDBC driver clients

The automatic client reroute feature in DB2 Universal Database (UDB) for Linux, UNIX, and Windows allows client applications to recover from a loss of communication with the server so that they can continue to work with minimal interruption.

Whenever a server locks up, each client that is connected to that server receives a communication error, which terminates the connection and results in an application error. When availability is important, you should have a redundant setup or failover support. (Failover is the ability of a server to take over operations when another server fails.) In either case, the DB2 Universal JDBC driver client attempts to reestablish the connection to a new server, or to the original server, which might be running on a failover node. When the connection is reestablished, the application receives an `SQLException` that informs it of the transaction failure, but the application can continue with the next transaction.

Restrictions:

- DB2 Universal JDBC driver client reroute support is available only for connections that use the `javax.sql.DataSource` interface.
- Before a client application can recover from a loss of communication, an alternate server location must be specified at the server. The database administrator specifies the alternate server with the `UPDATE ALTERNATE SERVER FOR DATABASE` command.

Procedure:

After the database administrator specifies the alternate server location on a particular database at the server instance, the primary and alternate server locations are returned back to the client at connect time. The DB2 Universal JDBC driver creates an instance of Referenceable object `DB2ClientRerouteServerList` and stores that instance in its transient memory. If communication is lost, the DB2 Universal JDBC driver tries to reestablish the connection using the server information that is returned from the server.

The `clientRerouteServerListJNDIName DataSource` property provides additional client reroute support at the client; `clientRerouteServerListJNDIName` has two functions:

- It allows alternate server information to persist across JVMs
- It provides an alternate server location in case the first connection to the database server fails

8 The clientRerouteServerListJNDIName identifies a JNDI reference to a
8 DB2ClientRerouteServerList instance in a JNDI repository for alternate server
8 information. After a successful connection to the primary server, the alternate
8 server information that is provided by clientRerouteServerListJNDIName is
8 overwritten by the information from the server. The DB2 Universal JDBC driver
8 will attempt to propagate the updated information to the JNDI store after a
8 failover if the clientRerouteServerListJNDIName property is defined. If
8 clientRerouteServerListJNDIName is specified, primary server information
8 specified in DB2ClientRerouteServerList will be used for connection. If the primary
8 server is not specified, serverName information specified on the data source will
8 be used.

8 DB2ClientRerouteServerList is a serializable Java bean with four properties:

- 8 • alternateServerName
- 8 • alternatePortNumber
- 8 • primaryServerName
- 8 • primaryPortNumber

8 Getter and setter methods for accessing these properties are provided. The
8 definition of the DB2ClientRerouteServerList class is as follows:

```
8 package com.ibm.db2.jcc;  
8 public class DB2ClientRerouteServerList  
8     implements java.io.Serializable,  
8     javax.naming.Referenceable  
8 {  
8     public String[] alternateServerName;  
8     public synchronized void  
8         setAlternateServerName(String[] alternateServer);  
8     public String[] getAlternateServerName();  
8     public int[] alternatePortNumber;  
8     public synchronized void  
8         setAlternatePortNumber(int[] alternatePortNumberList);  
8     public int[] getAlternatePortNumber();  
8  
8     public synchronized void  
8         setPrimaryServerName (String primaryServerName);  
8     public String getPrimaryServerName ();  
8     public synchronized void setPrimaryPortNumber (int primaryPortNumber)  
8     public int getPrimaryPortNumber ();  
8 }  
8
```

8 A newly established failover connection is configured with the original data source
8 properties, except for the server name and port number. In addition, any DB2 UDB
8 special registers that were modified during the original connection are
8 reestablished in the failover connection by DB2 Universal Driver JDBC driver.

8 When a communication failure occurs, the DB2 Universal JDBC driver first
8 attempts recovery to the primary server. If this fails, the driver attempts to connect
8 to the alternate location (failover). After a connection is reestablished, the driver
8 throws a java.sql.SQLException to the application with SQLCODE -4498, to
8 indicate to the application that the connection has been automatically reestablished
8 to the alternate server. The application can then retry its transaction.

8 **Procedure for make DB2ClientRerouteServerList persistent:**

8 To setup storage to make DB2ClientRerouteServerList persistent, follow these steps:

- 8 1. Create an instance of DB2ClientRerouteServerList and bind that instance to the
8 JNDI registry. For example:

```

8      // Create a starting context for naming operations
8      InitialContext registry = new InitialContext();
8      // Create a DB2ClientRerouteServerList object
8      DB2ClientRerouteServerList address=new DB2ClientRerouteServerList();
8
8      // Set the port number and server name for the primary server
8      address.setPrimaryPortNumber(50000);
8      address.setPrimaryServerName("mvs1.sj.ibm.com");
8
8      // Set the port number and server name for the alternate server
8      int[] port = {50002};
8      String[] server = {"mvs3.sj.ibm.com"};
8      address.setAlternatePortNumber(port);
8      address.setAlternateServerName(server);
8
8      registry.rebind("serverList", address);
8      2. Assign the JNDI name of the DB2ClientRerouteServerList object to DataSource
8      property clientRerouteServerListJNDIName. For example:
8      datasource.setClientRerouteServerListJNDIName("serverList");

```

Customizing the DB2 Universal JDBC driver configuration properties

The DB2 Universal JDBC driver configuration properties let you set property values that have driver-wide scope. Those settings apply across applications and DataSource instances. You can change the settings without having to change application source code or DataSource characteristics.

Each DB2 Universal JDBC driver configuration property setting is of the following form:

property=value

If the configuration property begins with `db2.jcc.override`, the configuration property is applicable to all connections and overrides any Connection or DataSource property with the same property name. If the configuration property begins with `db2.jcc` or `db2.jcc.default`, the configuration property value is a default. Connection or DataSource property settings override that value.

Procedure:

To set configuration properties:

- Set the configuration properties as Java system properties. Those settings override any other settings.

For standalone Java applications, you can set the configuration properties as Java system properties by specifying `-Dproperty=value` for each configuration property when you execute the **java** command.

- Set the configuration properties in a resource whose name you specify in the `db2.jcc.propertiesFile` Java system property. For example, you can specify an absolute path name for the `db2.jcc.propertiesFile` value.

For standalone Java applications, you can set the configuration properties by specifying the `-Ddb2.jcc.propertiesFile=path` option when you execute the **java** command.

- Set the configuration properties in a resource named `DB2JccConfiguration.properties`. A standard Java resource search is used to find `DB2JccConfiguration.properties`. The DB2 Universal JDBC driver searches for this resource only if you have not set the `db2.jcc.propertiesFile` Java system property.

7 DB2JccConfiguration.properties can be a standalone file, or it can be included in
7 a JAR file.
7 If DB2JccConfiguration.properties is a standalone file, the path for
7 DB2JccConfiguration.properties must be in the CLASSPATH concatenation.
7 If DB2JccConfiguration.properties is in a JAR file, the JAR file must be in the
7 CLASSPATH concatenation.

7 You can set the following DB2 Universal JDBC driver configuration properties. All
7 properties are optional.

7 **db2.jcc.override.traceFile**

7 Enables the DB2 Universal JDBC driver trace for Java driver code, and
7 specifies the name on which the trace file names are based.

7 Specify a fully qualified file name for the db2.jcc.override.traceFile property
7 value.

7 The db2.jcc.override.traceFile property overrides the traceFile property for
7 a Connection or DataSource object.

7 For example, specifying the following setting for db2.jcc.override.traceFile
7 enables tracing of the DB2 Universal JDBC Driver Java code to a file
7 named /SYSTEM/tmp/jdbctrace:

7 db2.jcc.override.traceFile=/SYSTEM/tmp/jdbctrace

7 You should set the trace properties under the direction of IBM Software
7 Support.

7 **db2.jcc.sqljUncustomizedWarningOrException**

7 Specifies the action that the DB2 Universal JDBC driver takes when an
7 uncustomized SQLJ application runs.

7 db2.jcc.sqljUncustomizedWarningOrException can have the following
7 values:

7 **0** The DB2 Universal JDBC driver does not generate a Warning or
7 Exception when an uncustomized SQLJ application runs. This is
7 the default.

7 **1** The DB2 Universal JDBC driver generates a Warning when an
7 uncustomized SQLJ application runs.

7 **2** The DB2 Universal JDBC driver generates an Exception when an
7 uncustomized SQLJ application runs.

7 **db2secFreeToken function removed**

7 The db2secFreeToken function (Free memory held by token) is no longer part of
7 the db2secGssapiServerAuthFunctions_1 user authentication plug-in API.

8 **Deploy custom security plug-ins carefully**

8 The integrity of your DB2 Universal Database (UDB) installation can be
8 compromised if the deployment of security plug-ins are not adequately coded,
8 reviewed, and tested. DB2 UDB takes precautions against many common types of
8 failures, but it cannot guarantee complete integrity when user-written security
8 plug-ins are deployed.

Security plug-ins

If you are using your own customized security plug-in, you can use a user ID of up to 255 characters on a connect statement issued through the CLP or a dynamic SQL statement.

Security plug-in APIs

For the `db2secGetGroupsForUser`, `db2secValidatePassword`, and `db2secGetAuthIDs` APIs, the input parameter, `dbname`, can be null and its corresponding length input parameter, `dbnamelen`, will be set to 0.

Security plug-in naming conventions (Linux and UNIX)

`.so` is now accepted as a file name extension for user-written security plug-in libraries on all Linux and UNIX platforms.

On AIX, security plug-in libraries can have an extension of `.a` or `.so`. If both versions of the plug-in library exist, the `.a` version is used.

For HP-UX on PA-RISC, security plug-in libraries can have an extension of `.sl` or `.so`. If both versions of the plug-in library exist, the `.sl` version is used.

On all other Linux and UNIX platforms, `.so` is the only supported file name extension for security plug-in libraries.

Restrictions on security plug-in libraries

On AIX, security plug-in libraries can have a file name extension of `.a` or `.so`. The mechanism used to load the plug-in library depends on which extension is used:

Plug-in libraries with a file name extension of `.a`

Plug-in libraries with file name extensions of `.a` are assumed to be archives containing shared object members. These members must be named `shr.o` (32-bit) or `shr64.o` (64-bit). A single archive can contain both the 32-bit and 64-bit members, allowing it to be deployed on both types of platforms.

For example, to build a 32-bit archive style plug-in library:

```
xlc_r -qmkshrobj -o shr.o MyPlugin.c -bE:MyPlugin.exp
ar rv MyPlugin.a shr.o
```

Plug-in libraries with a file name extension of `.so`

Plug-in libraries with file name extensions of `.so` are assumed to be dynamically loadable shared objects. Such an object is either 32-bit or 64-bit, depending on the compiler and linker options used when it was built. For example, to build a 32-bit plug-in library:

```
xlc_r -qmkshrobj -o MyPlugin.so MyPlugin.c -bE:MyPlugin.exp
```

On all platforms other than AIX, security plug-in libraries are always assumed to be dynamically loadable shared objects.

GSS-API security plug-ins do not support multiple-flow authentication

GSS-API authentication is limited to flowing one token from the client to the server and one token from the server to the client. These tokens are obtained from `gss_init_sec_context()` on the client and from `gss_accept_sec_context()` on the server. GSS-API plug-ins attempting additional flows will generate a security plug-in unexpected error, causing the connection to fail.

GSS-API security plug-ins do not support message encryption and signing

Message encryption and signing is not available in GSS-API security plug-ins.

Implicit ending of transactions in stand-alone applications

All application terminations (normal and abnormal) implicitly roll back outstanding units of work, regardless of operating system.

Distributed transaction support

In the What's new documentation for DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8.2, the Distributed transaction support information for the DB2 Universal JDBC driver improvements section has incorrect information. The last sentence of this section is incorrect. The correct information is:

As of Version 8.2, DB2 UDB provides support for distributed transaction processing that conforms to the XA specification. This support implements the Java 2 Platform Enterprise Edition (J2EE) Java Transaction Service (JTS) and Java Transaction API (JTA) specifications.

Application development: Programming Server Applications

Multiple result set common language runtime (CLR) procedures

The maximum number of result sets that can be returned by a common language runtime (CLR) procedure is limited. The limit is determined by the maximum number of DB2DataReader objects that the DB2 .NET data provider can simultaneously support having open within a connection. Concurrent active data reader support enables multiple DB2DataReader objects to be opened within a connection. Therefore multiple result sets can be returned from a CLR procedure.

Common language runtime (CLR) routine execution control modes (EXECUTION CONTROL clause)

As a database administrator or application developer, you might want to protect the assemblies associated with your DB2 Universal Database (UDB) external routines from unwelcome tampering by restricting the actions of routines at runtime. DB2 .NET CLR routines support the specification of an execution control mode that identifies what types of actions a routine is allowed to perform at runtime. At runtime, DB2 UDB can detect if the routine attempts to perform actions beyond the scope of its specified execution control mode, which can be helpful when determining whether an assembly has been compromised.

To set the execution control mode of a CLR routine, specify the optional EXECUTION CONTROL clause in the CREATE statement for the routine. Valid modes are:

- SAFE
- FILEREAD
- FILEWRITE
- NETWORK
- UNSAFE

7 To modify the execution control mode in an existing CLR routine, execute the
7 ALTER PROCEDURE or ALTER FUNCTION statement.

7 If the EXECUTION CONTROL clause is not specified for a CLR routine, by default
7 the CLR routine runs using the most restrictive execution control mode, SAFE.
7 Routines that are created with this execution control mode can only access
7 resources that are controlled by the database manager. Less restrictive execution
7 control modes allow a routine to access files on the local file system (FILEREAD or
7 FILEWRITE) or on the network. The execution control mode UNSAFE specifies
7 that no restrictions are to be placed on the behavior of the routine. Routines
7 defined with UNSAFE execution control mode can execute binary code.

7 These control modes represent a hierarchy of allowable actions, and a higher-level
7 mode includes the actions that are allowed below it in the hierarchy. For example,
7 execution control mode NETWORK allows a routine to access files on the network,
7 files on the local file system, and resources that are controlled by the database
7 manager. Use the most restrictive execution control mode possible and avoid using
7 the UNSAFE mode.

7 If DB2 UDB detects at runtime that a CLR routine is attempting an action outside
7 of the scope of its execution control mode, DB2 UDB returns an error (SQLSTATE
7 38501).

7 The EXECUTION CONTROL clause can only be specified for LANGUAGE CLR
7 routines. The scope of applicability of the EXECUTION CONTROL clause is
7 limited to the .NET CLR routine itself, and does not extend to any other routines
7 that it might call.

7 **Maximum decimal precision and scale in common language** 7 **runtime (CLR) routines**

7 The DECIMAL data type in DB2 Universal Database (UDB) is represented with a
7 precision of 31 digits and a scale of 28 digits. The .NET CLR System.Decimal data
7 type is limited to a precision of 29 digits and a scale of 28 digits. Therefore, DB2
7 UDB external CLR routines must not assign a value greater than $(2^{96})-1$, the
7 highest value that can be represented using a 29 digit precision and a 28 digit
7 scale, to a System.Decimal data type variable. DB2 UDB raises a runtime error
7 (SQLSTATE 22003, SQLCODE -413) if such an assignment occurs.

7 When a routine CREATE statement is executed, if a DECIMAL data type parameter
7 is defined with a scale greater than 28, DB2 UDB raises an error (SQLSTATE 42611,
7 SQLCODE -604).

Command Reference

9 **Migrating Databases**

9 **Restrictions:**

9 Version 8 documentation ambiguously states that no database migration is required
9 if the database has been migrated to a DB2 UDB Version 8 FixPak level. To be
9 specific, database migration is not required between fixpaks once the database is at
9 a Version 8 level (Version 8.1 or 8.2 or a subsequent fixpak). There are changes to
9 the database directory file structure in Version 8.2 and migration is automatically
9 performed for you when you move from Version 7 or Version 8.1 to Version 8.2.

9 However, if you go back from Version 8.2 to Version 8.1, you must run
9 **db2demigdbd** to restore the database directory file structure. Failing to do so will
9 result in error SQL10004 when you try to access the database.

6 **db2inidb - Initialize a mirrored database command**

6 Do not issue the db2 connect to *database* command prior to issuing the db2inidb
6 *database* as mirror command.

6 Attempting to connect to a split mirror database prior to initializing it erases the
6 log files needed for roll forward recovery.

6 The connect sets your database back to the state it was in when you suspended the
6 database. If the database is marked as consistent at the time of the suspend, DB2
6 Universal Database concludes there is no need for crash recovery and empties the
6 logs for future use. If this situation occurs, attempting to rollforward causes a
6 SQL4970 error.

7 **Usage note for the db2iupdt command**

7 Starting with Version 8.2, when you update a DB2 Universal Database instance
7 with the **db2iupdt** command, you must first stop any DB2 processes running
7 against that instance.

7 **New parameter for the db2sqljcustomize command**

7 The db2sqljcustomize command has a new parameter.

7 **db2sqljcustomize - DB2 SQLJ Profile Customizer command:**

7 **-storebindoptions**

7 Stores the value of the -bindoptions and -staticpositioned values in the
7 serialized profile. If these values are not specified when invoking the
7 dbsqljbind tool, the values stored in the serialized profile are used. When
7 the Customizer is invoked with .grp file, the values are stored in each
7 individual .ser file. The stored values can be viewed using db2sqljprint
7 tool.

7 **New parameter for the sqlj command**

7 The sqlj command has a new parameter.

7 **sqlj - DB2 SQLJ Translator command:**

7 **-db2optimize**

7 Specifies that the SQLJ translator generates code for a connection context
7 class that is optimized for DB2 Universal Database. This option optimizes
7 the code for the user defined context but not for the default context. When
7 you run the SQLJ translator with this option, the DB2 Universal JDBC
7 driver file db2jcc.jar must be in the CLASSPATH for compiling the
7 generated Java application.

9 **Monitor and troubleshoot command (db2pd) updates**

9 The Monitor and troubleshoot DB2 command (db2pd) retrieves information from
9 the DB2 UDB memory sets. The db2pd system command has been enhanced in the
9 following ways:

New -hadr parameter

Introduced at Version 8.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 7), the -hadr parameter reports High Availability Disaster Recovery information. Descriptions of each reported element can be found in the High availability disaster recovery section of the *System Monitor Guide and Reference*

New -utilities parameter

Introduced at Version 8.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 7), the -utilities parameter reports Utility information. Descriptions of each reported element can be found in the Utilities section of the *System Monitor Guide and Reference*.

New -activestatements parameter

Introduced at Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9), the -activestatements parameter returns information about active statements. The following information is returned:

AppHandl

The application handle using the active statement, including the node and the index.

UOW-ID

For the application associated with **AppHandl**, the unit of work identifier in which the statement became active.

StmtID

The statement identifier within the unit of work.

AnchID

The identifier for the package cache dynamic SQL hash anchor.

StmtUID

The identifier for the package cache dynamic SQL statement unique within the hash anchor.

EffISO

The effective isolation level of the statement.

EffLockTOut

The effective lock timeout value for the statement.

EffDegree

The effective degree of the statement.

StartTime

The time the statement started.

LastRefTime

The last time the statement was referenced by the application.

New wait option for the -locks parameter

Starting with Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9), you can specify the wait option with the -locks parameter to return only locks with a waiting status and locks that are being waited on.

New fields returned by the -applications parameter

Starting with Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9), the -applications parameter returns four new fields:

C-AnchID

This new field is the identifier for the package cache dynamic SQL hash anchor of the current statement. The value for this field is 0 if no current statement exists. The current hash anchor identifier is populated only when

9 the application is executing a request related to the statement, such as a
9 FETCH request on a cursor. Once the request processing is complete, the
9 values are set to 0. The value is also set to 0 for static SQL statements.

9 **C-StmtUID**

9 This new field is the package cache dynamic SQL statement unique
9 identifier within the hash anchor of the current statement. The value for
9 this field is 0 if no current statement exists. The current statement unique
9 identifier is populated only when the application is in the process of
9 executing a request related to the statement. Once the request execution is
9 complete, the values are set to 0. The value is also set to 0 for static SQL
9 statements.

9 **L-AnchID**

9 This new field is the package cache dynamic SQL hash anchor identifier of
9 the application's last executed statement. The value for this field is 0 if no
9 last executed statement exists, such as before any dynamic SQL statement
9 is executed. The value is also set to 0 for static SQL statements. The last
9 anchor hash identifier is populated after each request execution is complete
9 and survives until the completion of the next associated request .

9 **L-StmtUID**

9 This new field is the package cache dynamic SQL statement unique
9 identifier within the hash anchor of the application's last executed
9 statement. The value for this field is 0 if no last executed statement exists
9 or if the last statement executed was static SQL. The last statement
9 identifier is populated after the current request completes and survives
9 until the completion of the next request.

8 **Update to the SET CLIENT command**

8 The SET™ CLIENT command specifies connection settings for the back end
8 process.

8 The command parameter SYNCPOINT for this command is ignored as of Version
8 8. SYNCPOINT continues to be included for backward compatibility.

8 **Update to the PRECOMPILE command**

8 The PRECOMPILE command processes an application program source file
8 containing embedded SQL statements. A modified source file is produced,
8 containing host language calls for the SQL and, by default, a package is created in
8 the database.

8 The command parameter SYNCPOINT for this command is ignored as of Version
8 8. SYNCPOINT is continued to be included for backward compatibility.

8 **Update to the UPDATE HISTORY FILE command**

8 Updates the location, device type, or comment in a history file entry.

8 The command parameter STATUS specifies a new status for an entry.

8 Previous documentation incorrectly states that the STATUS command parameter
8 can have a value of "I" to mark the entry as inactive. Valid values are:

8 **A** Marks the entry as active.

8 **E** Marks the entry as expired.

Updates to the EXPORT and IMPORT commands

The complete “Required connection ” subsection for the EXPORT and IMPORT commands is as follows:

Required connection:

Database. If implicit connect is enabled, a connection to the default database is established. Utility access to Linux, UNIX, or Windows database servers from Linux, UNIX, or Windows clients must be a direct connection through the engine and not through a DB2 Connect gateway or loop back.

Update to the LOAD command

The complete information for the INDEXING MODE parameter’s AUTOSELECT value is as follows:

INDEXING MODE:

AUTOSELECT

The load utility will automatically decide between REBUILD or INCREMENTAL mode. The decision is based on the amount of data being loaded and the depth of the index tree. Information relating to the depth of the index tree is stored in the index object. RUNSTATS is not required to populate this information. AUTOSELECT is the default indexing mode.

File type modifiers for the load utility

The SET INTEGRITY command in the description for the “generatedoverride” modifier has been updated.

The description for the “usedefaults” modifier has also been updated.

The updates are as follows:

Table 27. Valid file type modifiers for load: All file formats

Modifier	Description
generatedoverride	<p>This modifier instructs the load utility to accept user-supplied data for all generated columns in the table (contrary to the normal rules for these types of columns). This is useful when migrating data from another database system, or when loading a table from data that was recovered using the RECOVER DROPPED TABLE option on the ROLLFORWARD DATABASE command. When this modifier is used, any rows with no data or NULL data for a non-nullable generated column will be rejected (SQL3116W).</p> <p>Note: When this modifier is used, the table will be placed in CHECK PENDING state. To take the table out of CHECK PENDING state without verifying the user-supplied values, issue the following command after the load operation:</p> <pre>SET INTEGRITY FOR < table-name > GENERATED COLUMN IMMEDIATE UNCHECKED</pre> <p>To take the table out of CHECK PENDING state and force verification of the user-supplied values, issue the following command after the load operation:<pre>SET INTEGRITY FOR < table-name > IMMEDIATE CHECKED.</pre><p>This modifier cannot be used with either the generatedmissing or the generatedignore modifier.</p></p>

8 Table 27. Valid file type modifiers for load: All file formats (continued)

8 Modifier	8 Description
8 usedefaults	<p>8 If a source column for a target table column has been specified, but it contains no 8 data for one or more row instances, default values are loaded. Examples of 8 missing data are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8 • For DEL files: two adjacent column delimiters (",,") or two adjacent column 8 delimiters separated by an arbitrary number of spaces (" , ") are specified for a 8 column value. <li>8 • For DEL/ASC/WSF files: A row that does not have enough columns, or is not 8 long enough for the original specification. <p>8 Note: For ASC files, NULL column values are not considered explicitly 8 missing, and a default will not be substituted for NULL column values. NULL 8 column values are represented by all space characters for numeric, date, time, 8 and /timestamp columns, or by using the NULL INDICATOR for a column of 8 any type to indicate the column is NULL.</p> <p>8 Without this option, if a source column contains no data for a row instance, one 8 of the following occurs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8 • For DEL/ASC/WSF files: If the column is nullable, a NULL is loaded. If the 8 column is not nullable, the utility rejects the row.

8 File type modifiers for the import utility

8 The description for the "usedefaults" and "codepage=x" modifiers have been
8 updated as follows:

8 Table 28. Valid file type modifiers for import: All file formats

8 Modifier	8 Description
8 usedefaults	<p>8 If a source column for a target table column has been specified, but it contains no 8 data for one or more row instances, default values are loaded. Examples of 8 missing data are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8 • For DEL files: two adjacent column delimiters (",,") or two adjacent column 8 delimiters separated by an arbitrary number of spaces (" , ") are specified for a 8 column value. <li>8 • For DEL/ASC/WSF files: A row that does not have enough columns, or is not 8 long enough for the original specification. <p>8 Note: For ASC files, NULL column values are not considered explicitly 8 missing, and a default will not be substituted for NULL column values. NULL 8 column values are represented by all space characters for numeric, date, time, 8 and /timestamp columns, or by using the NULL INDICATOR for a column of 8 any type to indicate the column is NULL.</p> <p>8 Without this option, if a source column contains no data for a row instance, one 8 of the following occurs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8 • For DEL/ASC/WSF files: If the column is nullable, a NULL is loaded. If the 8 column is not nullable, the utility rejects the row.

7 **STATUS** *new-status*

7 Specifies a new status for an entry. Only backup entries can have their
7 status updated. Valid values are:

7 **A** Active. Most entries are active.

7 **I** Inactive. Backup images that are no longer on the active log chain
7 become inactive.

7 **E** Expired. Backup images that are no longer required because there
7 are more than NUM_DB_BACKUPS active images are flagged as
7 expired.

7 **D** Backup images that are no longer available for recovery should be
7 marked as having been deleted.

7 **db2updv8 - Update database to version 8 current level**
7 **command**

7 This command updates the system catalogs in a database to support the current
7 level in the following ways:

- 7 • Introduces new routines shipped with the current database manager
- 7 • Catalogs the ODBC/CLI/JDBC schema procedures as trusted procedures to
7 improve performance and scalability
- 7 • Fixes two typographical errors in the SYSPROC.SNAPSHOT_QUIESCERS table
7 function's return parameters:
 - 7 – QUIESCER_TBS_ID corrected to QUIESCER_TBS_ID
 - 7 – QUIESCER_STATE corrected to QUIESCER_STATE
- 7 • Fixes LOB columns' column descriptors such that "logged" bit is consistent with
7 the catalog tables
- 7 • Creates SYSIBM.SYSREVTPEMAPPINGS view
- 7 • Updates the view definitions for SYSSTAT.COLUMNS and SYSSTAT.TABLES
- 7 • Updates the SYSCOLDIST.DISTCOUNT column to be updateable
- 7 • Updates the SYSINDEXES.TBSPACEID column such that column flags are not
7 set
- 7 • Fixes parameter lengths of 17 table functions. Refer to the *Column expansion for*
7 *snapshot UDFs* topic in the **Documentation updates | SQL Administrative**
7 **Routines** section of the *Version 8.2 Release Notes* for a complete listing of
7 functions
- 7 • Alters 33 SYSPROC snapshot UDFs to THREADSAFE:
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_DBM
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_FCM
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_FCMNODE
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_SWITCHES
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_APPL_INFO
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_APPL
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_STATEMENT
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_LOCKWAIT
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_AGENT
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_SUBSECT
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_DATABASE
 - 7 – SNAPSHOT_BP

- 7 - SNAPSHOT_LOCK
- 7 - SNAPSHOT_TABLE
- 7 - SNAPSHOT_DYN_SQL
- 7 - SNAPSHOT_TBS
- 7 - SNAPSHOT_TBS_CFG
- 7 - SNAPSHOT QUIESCERS
- 7 - SNAPSHOT_CONTAINER
- 7 - SNAPSHOT_RANGES
- 7 - SNAPSHOT_TBREORG
- 7 - HEALTH_DBM_INFO
- 7 - HEALTH_DBM_HI
- 7 - HEALTH_DBM_HI_HIS
- 7 - HEALTH_DB_INFO
- 7 - HEALTH_DB_HI
- 7 - HEALTH_DB_HI_HIS
- 7 - HEALTH_TBS_INFO
- 7 - HEALTH_TBS_HI
- 7 - HEALTH_TBS_HI_HIS
- 7 - HEALTH_CONT_INFO
- 7 - HEALTH_CONT_HI
- 7 - HEALTH_CONT_HI_HIS

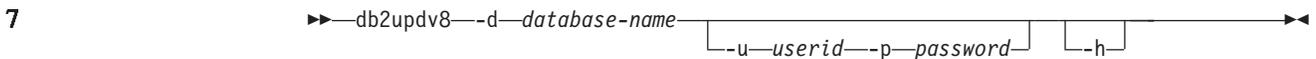
7 **Authorization:**

7 sysadm

7 **Required connection:**

7 Database. This command automatically establishes a connection to the specified database.

7 **Command syntax:**



7 **Command parameters:**

- 7 **-d database-name**
7 Specifies the name of the database to be updated.
- 7 **-u userid**
7 Specifies the user ID.
- 7 **-p password**
7 Specifies the password for the user.
- 7 **-h** Displays help information. When this option is specified, all other options are ignored, and only the help information is displayed.

7 **Example:**

7 After installing the current level (a FixPak or a new version), update the system
7 catalog in the sample database by issuing the following command:

7 db2updv8 -d sample

7 **Usage notes:**

- 7 1. This command can be used only on a database running DB2 Universal
7 Database Version 8.1.2 or later. If the command is issued more than once, no
7 errors are reported and each of the catalog updates is applied only once.
7 2. To enable the new built-in functions, all applications must disconnect from the
7 database and the database must be deactivated if it has been activated.

7 **Formatting trap files (Windows)**

7 A new tool, db2xpvt.exe, is available to let you format trap files (*.TRP). This tool
7 formats DB2 Universal Database's binary trap files into a human readable ASCII
7 file. Trap files are located in the instance directory (DB2INSTPROF) by default or
7 in the diagnostic data directory path if the DIAGPATH database manager
7 configuration parameter is set.

7 **Authorization:**

7 You must have access to the DIAGPATH directory.

7 **Command syntax:**

7

7 **Command parameters:**

7 */p path* A semicolon (;) separated path that points to the location or locations
7 where the binary files and PDB files are located.

7 */v* Displays version information.

7 */m* Formats a memory dump along with the rest of the trap file.

7 */n* Format data without regard to line number information.

7 *infile* Specifies the input file.

7 *outfile* Specifies the output file.

Data Movement

9 **Bind files used by the export, import and load utilities**

9 A new bind file called db2uImpInsUpdate.bnd has been added to the import
9 utility, with a default isolation level of Read Stability (RS). This bind file is used by
9 the Import Utility only during INSERT_UPDATE. The import utility's INSERT,
9 REPLACE and CREATE options still use the db2uimpb.bnd file.

9 The db2uImpInsUpdate.bnd bind file cannot be bound with the INSERT BUF
9 option. Attempting to perform IMPORT INSERT_UPDATE while
9 db2uImpInsUpdate.bnd is bound with INSERT BUF causes the import utility to
9 fail, resulting in the following error:

9 SQL3525: The "INSERT_UPDATE" option is incompatible with the "INSERT
9 BUF BIND ON DB2UIMPINSUPDATE.BND" option.

9 Using import with buffered inserts

9 Version 8.2 of the *Data Movement Utilities Guide and Reference* states:

9 The buffered inserts feature cannot be used in conjunction with import
9 operations in which the INSERT_UPDATE parameter is specified. A new bind
9 file (db2uimpm2.bnd) is introduced to enforce this restriction.

9 Due to the introduction of a new bind file, the statement should be:

9 The buffered inserts feature cannot be used in conjunction with import
9 operations in which the INSERT_UPDATE parameter is specified. A new bind
9 file (db2uImpInsUpdate.bnd) is introduced to enforce this restriction.

9 Index information lost when the import utility is used

8 You can use the import utility to recreate a table that was saved through the export
8 utility.

8 The *Data Movement* topic "Using import to recreate an exported table" outlines
8 attributes of the original table are *not* retained. In addition to the attributes which
8 have already been documented, the following attributes are *not* retained:

- 8 • Index information:
 - 8 – Include columns (if any)
 - 8 – Index name, if the index is a primary-key index
 - 8 – Descending order, if the index is a primary-key index (Ascending is the
8 default)

Data Recovery and High Availability

8 High availability disaster recovery overview

8 When performing the START HADR, STOP HADR, or TAKEOVER HADR
8 commands, the corresponding error codes might be generated: SQL01767N,
8 SQL01769N, or SQL01770N with a reason code of 98. The reason code indicates
8 that there is no installed license for HADR on the server where the command was
8 run. To correct the problem, install a valid HADR license using **db2licm** or install a
8 version of the server that contains a valid HADR license as part of its distribution.

7 Cross-platform backup and restore support

7 DB2 Universal Database (UDB) supports cross-platform backup and restore
7 operations.

7 You can restore databases created on a DB2 UDB Version 8 32-bit Windows
7 platform to a DB2 UDB Version 8 64-bit Windows platform, or the reverse.

7 You can restore databases created on a DB2 UDB Version 8 32-bit Linux x86
7 platform to a DB2 UDB Version 8 64-bit Linux x86-64 or IA64 platform, or the
7 reverse.

You can restore databases created on DB2 UDB Version 8 AIX, HP-UX, Linux PPC, Linux zSeries, or the Solaris Operating Environment platforms, in 32-bit or 64-bit, to DB2 UDB Version 8 AIX, HP-UX, Linux PPC, Linux zSeries, or Solaris Operating Environment platforms (32-bit or 64-bit).

Backing up to tape (Linux)

The maximum block size limit for 3480 and 3490 tape devices on Linux is 61 440 bytes

Table 30. Maximum block size limit for 3480 and 3490 tape devices on Linux

Device	Attachment	Block Size Limit	DB2 buffer size limit (in 4-KB pages)
3480	s370	61 440	15
3490	s370	61 440	15

Tivoli Storage Manager

When calling the BACKUP DATABASE or RESTORE DATABASE commands, you can specify that you want to use the Tivoli Storage Manager (TSM) product to manage database or table space backup or restore operation. The minimum required level of TSM client API is Version 4.2.0, except on the following:

- 64-bit Solaris systems which require TSM client API Version 4.2.1.
- 64-bit Windows NT operating systems which require TSM client API Version 5.1.
- 32-bit Linux for iSeries and pSeries® which requires at minimum TSM client API Version 5.1.5
- 64-bit Linux for iSeries and pSeries which requires at minimum TSM client API Version 5.2.2
- 64-bit Linux on AMD Opteron systems which require a minimum TSM client API Version 5.2.0.
- Linux for zSeries 64-bit which requires a minimum TSM client API Version 5.2.2.

Value restrictions for the HADR local host and local service parameters

When specifying values for the high availability disaster recovery (HADR) local host and local service parameters (HADR_LOCAL_SVC and HADR_REMOTE_SVC) while preparing an **update database configuration** command, the values must be ports that are not in use for any other service. If the parameters are being configured using the Linux or UNIX command line, the values should be also set in the /etc/services file.

Additional system requirements for high availability disaster recovery

If you create a table space on the primary database and log replay fails on the standby database because the containers are not available, the primary database does not receive an error message stating that the log replay failed.

To check for log replay errors, you must monitor the db2diag.log and the administration log on the standby database when you are creating new table spaces.

7 If a takeover operation occurs, the new table space that you created is not available
7 on the new primary database. To recover from this situation, restore the table space
7 on the new primary database from a backup image.

7 In the following example, table space MY_TABLESPACE is restored on database
7 MY_DATABASE before it is used as the new primary database:

- 7 1. db2 connect to my_database
- 7 2. db2 list tablespaces show detail

7 **Note:** Run the **db2 list tablespaces show detail** command to show the status
7 of all table spaces and to obtain the table space ID number required for
7 Step 5.

- 7 3. db2 stop hadr on database my_database
- 7 4. db2 "restore database my_database tablespace (my_tablespace) online
7 redirect"
- 7 5. db2 "set tablespace containers for my_tablespace_ID_# ignore rollforward
7 container operations using (path '/my_new_container_path/')"
- 7 6. db2 "restore database my_database continue"
- 7 7. db2 rollforward database my_database to end of logs and stop tablespace
7 "(my_tablespace)"
- 7 8. db2 start hadr on database my_database as primary

7 **Non-replicated operations for high availability disaster** 7 **recovery**

7 Version 8.2 documentation states:

7 BLOBs and CLOBs are not replicated; however, the space for them will be
7 allocated on the standby database.

7 The statement should read as follows:

7 Non-logged BLOBs and CLOBs are not replicated; however, the space for them will
7 be allocated on the standby database.

7 **HADR does not support raw logs**

7 High availability disaster recovery (HADR) does not support the use of raw I/O
7 (direct disk access) for database log files. If HADR is started with the START
7 HADR command, or if the database is restarted with HADR configured, and raw
7 logs are detected, the associated command will fail with SQL1768N reason code
7 "9".

Data Warehouse Center

9 **DB2 Data Warehouse Center requires Unicode format** 9 **database**

9 After installing DB2 Universal Database Version 8.1 FixPak 7 or later, you need to
9 run the Warehouse Control Database Management tool to create a new warehouse
9 control database that is in Unicode format.

9 **Prerequisites:**

9 To create and store a copy of the existing warehouse control database, your
9 workstation must have enough disk space to store this copy plus twice as much
9 space as the warehouse control database requires to store temporary files. For
9 example, if the existing warehouse control database is 10 MB, a total of 30 MB
9 must be available in the same instance as the existing warehouse control database.

9 **Procedure:**

9 Follow these steps to create a new warehouse control database in Unicode format:

- 9 1. Run the Warehouse Control Database Management tool:
 - 9 • **On Windows:** Click **Start** and select **Programs → IBM DB2→ Set up Tools→**
9 **Warehouse Control Database Management.**
 - 9 • **On AIX:** Run the **db2wcdm** script.
- 9 2. Enter the name of the existing warehouse control database. You are then
9 prompted for a new warehouse control database name. This creates a new
9 Unicode warehouse control database.

8 **Defining DB2 warehouse sources and targets**

8 The following update affects two Data Warehouse Center topics:

- 8 • Defining DB2 warehouse sources
- 8 • Defining a warehouse target

8 By default, when you define a warehouse source or a warehouse target, the
8 number of tables that are returned is 250. However, you can use the new
8 environment variable **VWS_MAX_TABLELIST** to set the number of tables that are
8 returned. The maximum number of tables that can be returned is 40 000. This
8 number might be less depending on the size of the table names in the list. It is
8 recommended that you specify a number much smaller than 40 000.

6 **Updates to the Business Intelligence tutorial**

6 **Verifying that the DWCTBC and TBC_MD databases are registered with** 6 **ODBC:**

6 In Version 8, the control database, TBC_MD that is used in the tutorial, does not
6 need to be a system ODBC data source. However, the target database or database
6 source DWCTBC must be a system ODBC data source.

6 **Opening the Define Warehouse Source notebook:**

6 The procedure for opening the Define Warehouse Source notebook for the Tutorial
6 Relational Source has changed.

6 **Procedure:**

6 To open the Define Warehouse Source notebook for the Tutorial Relational Source:

- 6 1. From the Data Warehouse Center window, right-click the **Warehouse Sources**
6 folder.
- 6 2. Click **Define** → **ODBC** → **DB2** → **DB2 Family.**

6 The Define Warehouse Source notebook opens.

6 **Opening the Define Warehouse Target notebook:**

6 The procedure for opening the Define Warehouse Target notebook has changed.

6 **Procedure:**

6 To open the Define Warehouse Target notebook:

- 6 1. From the Data Warehouse Center window, right-click the **Warehouse Targets**
- 6 folder.
- 6 2. Click **Define** —> **ODBC** —> **DB2** —> **DB2 Family**.

6 The Define Warehouse Target notebook opens.

6 **Setting the purge limit for warehouse log files**

6 The log file holds records until a designated count limit is reached. The default
6 count limit is 1000 records. Typically, each job that you run creates 12 to 15 log
6 records. Set the purge limit to a number that meets your needs by updating the
6 **Purge log when total records equal** field on the Server tab of the Warehouse
6 Properties page.

4 **Data Warehouse Center support for CURSOR load**

4 The DB2 Universal Database Load step now allows a view or a table to be used as
4 the source to the step, resulting in a LOAD FROM CURSOR.

4 In order to map columns in the wizard for CURSOR load, the **Map columns based**
4 **on column positions found in the input file** radio button must be selected.

7 **Unicode warehouse control database migration and**
7 **limitations**

7 Starting with Version 8.2 of the Data Warehouse Center, the warehouse control
7 database must be a Unicode database. If you have a Unicode warehouse control
7 database from a version of the Data Warehouse Center that is before Version 8.2,
7 you still must create a new Unicode control database by using the Warehouse
7 Control Database Management tool.

7 When you migrate a warehouse control database from a version of the Data
7 Warehouse Center that is before Version 8.2, the Data Warehouse Center Control
7 Database Management tool runs the **db2move** command to move the data to a
7 new Unicode control database. During this process, windows appear that show the
7 progress of the **db2move** command. This migration path only occurs once.

7 The Data Warehouse Center does not support Unicode on Sybase servers.

7 **Change in date format for Modified column**

7 In the details view of the main Data Warehouse Center window, the format of the
7 date in the **Modified** column has been updated. The date in the **Modified** column
7 is displayed in the format for your locale and includes the time. This change in the
7 date format ensures that sorting objects on the **Modified** column functions
7 properly. This update applies to most lists of Data Warehouse Center objects that
7 are shown in the Navigator and Details views, such as:

- 7 • Subjects
- 7 • Processes
- 7 • Warehouse schemas
- 7 • Warehouse agent sites

- 7 • Programs
- 7 • Steps
- 7 • Data resources
- 7 • Users
- 7 • User groups

7 **Defining statistical transformers in the Data Warehouse Center**

7 To perform a statistical transformation of your data, define the statistical
7 transformer that you want to use.

7 **Procedure:**

7 To define statistical transformers:

- 7 1. Open the Process Model window.
- 7 2. Click the transformer icon and select a transformer from the list of available
7 transformers.
- 7 3. Link the transformer that you selected to a warehouse source and warehouse
7 target as required by the rules for that transformer.

7 Each transformer has specific rules for how it must be linked to a warehouse
7 source and warehouse target. See the documentation for each transformer for more
7 information.

7 **Prerequisite for the iSeries warehouse agent**

7 To use an iSeries warehouse agent for DB2 Warehouse Manager on V5R2 and V5R3
7 systems, the following PTF is required:

7 PTF S113558

7 This database PTF enables the CLI on iSeries to handle Unicode data.

DB2 .NET Data Provider

9 **Concurrent active data reader support**

9 The DB2 .NET Data Provider now supports the use of concurrent active data
9 readers. This means that you can concurrently access data from multiple
9 DB2DataReader instances that use the same DB2Connection instance. Each
9 DB2DataReader instance must be associated with its own DB2Command instance.
9 In order to use the associated DB2Command instance for any other purpose, you
9 must explicitly call the DB2DataReader.Close method.

7 **DB2Connection.ConnectionString property**

7 There is an additional keyword for the DB2Connection.ConnectionString property:

7 **CurrentSchema**

7 The schema to be used after a successful connection. Upon a successful
7 connection, a SET CURRENT SCHEMA statement is sent to the DB2 server.
7 This allows the application to name SQL objects without having to qualify
7 them by a schema name.

DB2 Connect

Change to authentication type negotiation through a gateway

Starting with DB2 Connect™ Version 8.2.2 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 9) the gateway is no longer a passive participant during authentication negotiation. Instead, the gateway takes an active role. The authentication type specified in the database directory entry at the gateway overrides the authentication type cataloged at the client. The client, gateway, and server must all specify compatible types. If the cataloged authentication type at the gateway has not been specified in the database directory entry, SERVER authentication will be the default type requested of the server. However, negotiation will still take place between the client and server if the server does not support SERVER authentication. This behavior is in contrast to the client which defaults to SERVER_ENCRYPT if an authentication type has not been specified.

The authentication type cataloged at the gateway is not used if DB2NODE or the SQL_CONNECT_NODE option of the Set Client API has been set at the client. In these cases negotiation is still strictly between the client and the server.

A server with SERVER_ENCRYPT specified as the authentication type in the database manager configuration no longer accepts connections or attachments from clients that request SERVER authentication.

New security scenario

A new security scenario has been added for APPC connections:

Authentication	GSSPLUGIN
Security	none
Validation	GSS API security plugin mechanism

Corrections to diagrams

The following DB2 Connect Enterprise Edition topics have diagrams that are incorrect:

- Accessing host or iSeries DB2 data using DB2 Connect Enterprise Edition
- Accessing DB2 data from the Web using Java

The following table outlines corrections for diagrams in the "Accessing host or iSeries DB2 data using DB2 Connect Enterprise Edition" topic.

Table 31. Corrections for diagrams in the "Accessing host or iSeries DB2 data using DB2 Connect Enterprise Edition" topic

Location within the topic	Correction
Legend for all four diagrams	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• References to "DB2 for OS/390 V5R1" should be "DB2 for OS/390 V6 or later".• References to "DB2 for AS/400® V4R2" should be "DB2 for iSeries V5R1 or later".
First diagram (Figure 1: DB2 Connect Enterprise Edition)	All references to "APPC" and "SNA Communications Support" are incorrect. SNA/APPC is not supported as an inbound protocol for the DB2 Runtime Client by DB2 Linux, Unix, and Windows servers, including DB2 Connect Enterprise Edition.

The following table outlines corrections for diagrams in the "Accessing DB2 data from the Web using Java" topic.

Table 32. Corrections for diagrams in the "Accessing DB2 data from the Web using Java" topic

Location within the topic	Correction
Legend	<ul style="list-style-type: none">References to "DB2 for OS/390 V5R1" should be "DB2 for OS/390 V6 or later".References to "DB2 for AS/400 V4R2" should be "DB2 for iSeries V5R1 or later".

Development Center

DB2 Development Center Version 8.2 requires level 9.2.9 of the Distributed Debugger

DB2 Development Center Version 8.2 now requires Version 9.2.9 of the IBM Distributed Debugger. If you do not have Version 9.2.9 of the Distributed Debugger installed, you cannot debug Java stored procedures using the Development Center.

Version 9.2.9 of the Distributed Debugger no longer supports Solaris Operating Environments.

For more information about the Distributed Debugger, visit to the Distributed Debugger Web site at <http://www.ibm.com/software/awdtools/debugger>.

Length restriction in the DB2 Development Center Change Variable Range window

When you are changing the length of a variable using the Change Variable Range dialog in DB2 Development Center, there is a maximum length of 1024 bytes. This limitation is currently documented in an English-only message.

Restrictions to DB2 Universal type 2 and type 4 drivers

In Version 8.2, support was added to allow users to connect to a DB2 Universal Database (UDB) database from within the Development Center using the DB2 Universal Type 2 and Type 4 drivers. However, if you attempt to use one of these drivers to connect to an iSeries server, or to a DB2 UDB server that is Version 8.1 or earlier, you will see the following error message:

```
Connection to <database> failed.  
IBM DB2 Universal driver (JCC) not found.
```

Refer to the topic titled "JDBC drivers" in the DB2 Information Center for additional information on which drivers to use in order to avoid this error.

GUI Tools

Modifying the statement termination character

Starting with DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8.2 FixPak 1 (equivalent to Version 8.1 FixPak 8), you can modify the statement termination character within a script that is being run in the command line processor (CLP) or the Command

8 Editor. This on the fly modification is similar to the method currently available in
8 DB2 UDB for OS/390. The following example shows how the termination character
8 can be changed after each statement:

```
8 connect to gilroy user newton using password;  
8 select * from newton.department;  
8 —#SET TERMINATOR :  
8 select * from newton.employee;  
8 —#SET TERMINATOR @  
8 select * from newton.department@  
8 —#SET TERMINATOR ;  
8 select * from newton.department;  
8 —#SET TERMINATOR &  
8 terminate&
```

8 The ability to change the termination character is important when a script contains
8 compound statements. In the following example, DB2 UDB assumes that the first ;
8 that it encounters in the compound CREATE TRIGGER statement is the
8 termination character for the whole CREATE TRIGGER statement. However, this is
8 not the case. It is only meant to be the termination character for one of the
8 statements inside the compound CREATE TRIGGER statement.

```
8  
8 CONNECT TO SAMPLE;  
8 DROP TRIGGER newton.NWTRIGGER;  
8 CREATE TRIGGER newton.NWTRIGGER AFTER DELETE  
8 ON newton.NWTTABLE FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL  
8 BEGIN ATOMIC  
8 insert into newton.nwttable values(0,'0');  
8 insert into newton.nwttable values( -1, '-1');  
8 END;  
8 CONNECT RESET;  
8 TERMINATE;
```

8 The following example shows how the statement termination character can be
8 modified within the script to achieve the desired results.

```
8 CONNECT TO SAMPLE;  
8 DROP TRIGGER newton.NWTRIGGER;  
8 —#SET TERMINATOR @  
8 CREATE TRIGGER newton.NWTRIGGER AFTER DELETE  
8 ON newton.NWTTABLE FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL  
8 BEGIN ATOMIC  
8 insert into newton.nwttable values(0,'0');  
8 insert into newton.nwttable values( -1, '-1');  
8 END@  
8 —#SET TERMINATOR ;  
8 CONNECT RESET;
```

8 If you do not need your scripts to run locally on DB2 for OS/390 or your DB2
8 UDB scripts do not connect to OS/390, then using —#SET TERMINATOR is not
8 the recommended method for modifying statement termination characters. Instead
8 you should use the existing -tdX or ;— options.

8 The -tdX option allows you to specify the termination character when calling a
8 script using a CLP command. The 'X' represents the character being used as the
8 statement termination character. For example, in the command:

```
8 db2 -tvf test.txt -td&
```

8 The & will be used as the statement termination character when running the script
8 in the test.txt file. If that script contained the compound CREATE TRIGGER
8 statement, it would be written as:

```

8      CONNECT TO SAMPLE&
8      DROP TRIGGER newton.NWTTRIGGER&
8      CREATE TRIGGER newton.NWTTRIGGER AFTER DELETE
8      ON newton.NWTTABLE FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
8      BEGIN ATOMIC
8          insert into newton.nwtttable values(0,'0');
8          insert into newton.nwtttable values( -1, '-1');
8      END&
8      CONNECT RESET&
8      TERMINATE&

```

8 **Note:** The `-tdX` option is not available in the Command Editor.

8 The script containing the compound CREATE TRIGGER statement can also be
8 rewritten using the `;-` option as follows:

```

8      CONNECT TO SAMPLE;
8      DROP TRIGGER newton.NWTTRIGGER;
8      CREATE TRIGGER newton.NWTTRIGGER AFTER DELETE
8      ON newton.NWTTABLE FOR EACH ROW MODE DB2SQL
8      BEGIN ATOMIC
8          insert into newton.nwtttable values(0,'0');-
8          insert into newton.nwtttable values( -1, '-1');-
8      END;
8      CONNECT RESET;
8      TERMINATE;

```

7 Database unavailable status in the database details pane of 7 the Control Center

7 You can use the Control Center's details pane to view information about your
7 databases. Selecting a database in the object tree or contents pane displays a
7 summary of its state. In certain situations database information might be
7 unavailable. Some reasons for this unavailability are described in the following
7 table.

7 *Table 33. Reasons for a database status of unavailable*

7 Database status element	7 Possible reasons for unavailable status
7 Last backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 7 • No backups have been performed for the database. 7 • User does not have the required authority to access this information.
7 Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 7 • Database is pre-Version 8.2. 7 • User does not have the required authority to access this information.
7 Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 7 • Database is pre-Version 8.2. 7 • Database has multiple partitions. 7 • User does not have the required authority to access this information.
7 Health	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 7 • Health monitor is not turned on. 7 • Timing delay. There is approximately a 5 minute delay from the time a database is activated until its health status is available.
7 Maintenance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 7 • Database is pre-Version 8.2.

Default write to table output generation (Create Event Monitor)

A **Generate** button has been added to the Output options dialog, which is launched from the Create Event Monitor window. Clicking the Generate button generates the default *write to table output* option. This output is equivalent to the syntax generated by the **db2evtb1** command.

The generated option shows the user which tables and data elements will be included when the event monitor is created. Users can modify the command to suit their needs.

The generated syntax is based on the event monitor name and event types specified in the Create Event Monitor window. Specify the event monitor name and event types before generating the output option syntax.

If the event monitor name or event types change after the generation of the output option, a message displays to remind the user to regenerate the output option before creating the event monitor. If the output option is not regenerated, event tables will be generated based on the event monitor name that was previously specified.

Information Catalog Center

Configuration sample scripts

The `ICCCfg.jacl` and `ICCCfg.properties` sample scripts are provided with the Information Catalog Center for the Web with the DB2 Embedded Application Server. You can use these sample scripts to configure the Information Catalog Center for the Web with WebSphere Application Server 5. These scripts are located in the `sqllib\samples\icweb` directory.

Web server configuration

When configuring the Information Catalog Center for the Web with the DB2 Embedded Application Server, if your metadata contains URLs that access files on the server, you must map the URLs to the correct location by using aliases in the Web server configuration. You must also map the help and copyright links. If you use the DB2 Embedded Application Server, a Web server must be configured correctly and running for these links to work even though you don't need to plug in to a Web server.

Installation and Configuration Supplement

Application server for DB2 UDB

The application server for DB2 Universal Database (UDB) no longer supports remote administration or stored procedures.

The updated topics are as follows:

Enabling the application server for DB2 UDB

Enabling the database does the following:

- Connects to a specified database
- Creates and populates metadata tables
- Updates the DBM CFG parameters, `JDK_PATH`, and `JAVA_HEAP_SZ`
- Installs the DB2 Web Services Application.

Prerequisite:

On Linux, after installing the application server and before enabling the application server, you must set up the Linux Java environment. Refer to your Application Development Guide: Building and Running Applications book for details on setting up the Linux Java environment.

Procedure:

To enable the application server for DB2 UDB, perform the following:

1. Log on to the DB2 server as **root** on Linux or UNIX operating systems, or as a user with **Administrator** privileges on Windows operating systems.
2. For Linux- and UNIX-based operating systems run the following command:

```
. /db2instance_path/sqlllib/db2profile
```

where *db2instance_path* is where the DB2 UDB instance was created.

3. Run one the following commands:

- For Linux and UNIX operating systems:

```
AppServer_install_path/bin/enable.sh  
-db db_alias  
-user db_user  
-password db_password  
-db2path path_to_sqllib  
-instance instance_name  
-easpath path_to_eas  
-fencedid fenced_userid
```

- For Windows operating systems:

```
AppServer_install_path\bin\enable  
-db db_alias  
-user db_user  
-password db_password  
-db2path path_to_sqllib  
-instance instance_name  
-easpath path_to_eas
```

where:

- *db_alias* is the alias of the database to be enabled.
- *db_user* is the user id to use when connecting to the database.
- *db_password* is the password to use with the user id connecting to the database.
- *path_to_sqllib* is the path to the DB2 UDB instance SQLLIB directory. This path is used to update DB2EAS with the required JAR files.
- *instance_name* is the name of a DB2 UDB instance.
- *path_to_eas* is the path to the embedded application server.
- *fenced_userid* is the user id for the fenced user.

Once the application server for DB2 UDB is enabled, the application server is started automatically.

Starting the application server for DB2 UDB locally

The application server should be started using the fenced user ID for systems creating web services in a .NET environment or running XML Metadata Registry (XMR) only.

Starting the application server for DB2 UDB remotely

This section is removed. The application server for DB2 UDB no longer supports remote administration.

Stopping the application server for DB2 UDB locally

The application server should be stopped using the fenced user ID for systems creating web services in a .NET environment or running XML Metadata Registry (XMR) only.

Stopping the application server for DB2 UDB remotely

This section is removed. The application server for DB2 UDB no longer supports remote administration.

Uninstalling the application server for DB2 UDB

This section is removed. The application server for DB2 UDB no longer supports remote administration.

DB2 Embedded Application Server enablement

The enabled database of a DB2 Embedded Application Server must be located in a 32-bit instance Any databases accessed from the DB2 Embedded Application Server can be located in 32-bit or 64-bit instances.

Deploying DB2 Web Tools

Application servers using JDK 1.4 no longer require customization of the CLASSPATH variable during DB2 Web Tools deployment. All dependencies, including those for XML parser and transformer, are now deployed with the web module and are expected to be loaded from the WEB-INF\lib directory according to the J2EE specification. This change affects two information topics:

- Deploying DB2 Web Tools on WebLogic application servers
- Deploying DB2 Web Tools on other application servers

The updated topics are as follows:

Deploying DB2 Web Tools on WebLogic application servers

This task describes how to deploy and configure DB2 Web Tools (including the Web Command Center and the Web Health Center) on BEA WebLogic 7.0. These tools run as Web applications on a Web server to provide access to DB2 servers through Web browsers.

Prerequisites:

Before you install DB2 Web Tools on WebSphere, ensure that you have:

- BEA WebLogic 7.0 application server.
- IBM DB2 Administration Client Version 8.
- A Web browser that is compliant with HTML 4.0.

Note: DB2 Web Tools were tested using Netscape 4.x, Netscape 6.x, Netscape 7.x, Mozilla 1.x, Internet Explorer 5.x, Opera 6.x, Konqueror 3.x (Linux) and EudoraWeb 2.x (Palm OS). Use of certain Web browsers that have not been tested might require an explicit reference to be added in the servlet configuration.

Restrictions:

7 The following restrictions apply to the DB2 Web Tools deployment:

- 7 • Multiple language and code page conversions between the middle tier and DB2
7 servers are not supported. Although the language for the server is what is used
7 for display, some characters might appear incorrectly.
- 7 • In order to see the health alerts for databases, table spaces, and table space
7 containers in the Web Health Center, you need to ensure that the databases are
7 cataloged on the Web application server.
- 7 • The use of the Web browser buttons (**Stop**, **Back**, **History**) are not supported
7 while using DB2 Web Tools.
- 7 • If you are using Netscape Navigator 4 with DB2 Web Tools, your browser
7 display might not refresh properly . If you experience this problem, you can
7 refresh your display by minimizing the window and then maximizing it. You
7 can also refresh the display by hiding the browser window under another
7 window, and then bringing it to the foreground again.
- 7 • To assign your own alias to any DB2 Universal Database (UDB) system, instance
7 node, or database, you must explicitly catalog it on the application server using
7 the DB2 Configuration Assistant or the DB2 Control Center.
- 7 • During their first startup, the DB2 Web Tools require a significantly longer time
7 to initialize than for subsequent startups. Most of this wait is due to the
7 automatic catalog process. If you do not want to use the automatic catalog
7 functionality, you can shorten the time you must wait by turning the automatic
7 cataloging off through the servlet configuration.

7 **Note:** The servlet configuration parameters are available in the deployment
7 descriptor file `web.xml`. The parameter names and default values are
7 subject to change with each release. Some application servers might allow
7 changes to these parameters, either through their interface or by editing
7 the `web.xml` file directly.

- 7 • The output (results) buffer has an absolute maximum size of 1MB when using a
7 desktop or laptop browser, even if it is configured for larger capacity. In the case
7 of PDA Web browsers, the limit is 1KB.
- 7 • On Linux, UNIX, and Windows operating systems, the DB2 Web Tools
7 automatically discover and catalog any systems on the same TCP/IP net as the
7 application server. Systems on the same TCP/IP net have the same first three
7 digits in their IP address. The tools try to catalog the DB2 UDB system nodes
7 using the original remote TCP/IP host name. If there is name duplication, the
7 tools assign a unique random name. You must explicitly catalog any other DB2
7 administration servers on the application server if you want them to be
7 accessible. This includes any servers using TCP/IP that are not on the same
7 TCP/IP net as the application server, as well as any servers that do not use
7 TCP/IP.
- 7 • On Linux, UNIX, and Windows operating systems, the DB2 Web Tools attempt
7 to automatically discover and catalog any DB2 UDB instance nodes and
7 databases that reside on cataloged DB2 UDB systems. It is possible to configure
7 a remote instance for multiple communication protocols, therefore, the catalog
7 will contain a separate node entry for each protocol supported by an
7 automatically cataloged instance. If there is name duplication, the tools assign a
7 unique random name.

7 **Procedure:**

7 To install DB2 Web Tools on WebLogic application servers:

- 7 1. Deploy the DB2 Web Tools through the WebLogic administrative console by
7 completing the following:
 - 7 a. Start the WebLogic administrative console.
 - 7 b. Click **domain** -> **deployments** -> **Web Applications** in the left pane of the
7 window.
 - 7 c. Click the **Configure a new Web Application** link to install DB2 Web Tools
7 Web application.
 - 7 d. Browse the listing of the file system to locate `Sqllib\tools\web\db2wa.war`.
 - 7 e. Click on **select** beside the `db2wa.war` file name.
 - 7 f. Choose a server from the list of available servers to house DB2 Web Tools,
7 select the server and click the arrow to move the server to target servers.

7 **Note:** Preserving the original name **db2wa** is mandatory, as DB2 Web Tools
7 has it hardcoded.

- 7 g. Click **Configure and Deploy**.
 - 7 h. Wait until the application server refreshes the deployment status of the Web
7 application on the selected server. If successful, it should show
7 **Deployed=true**
- 7 2. Invoke the DB2 Web Tools Web application, which is located at:
7 `http://server_name:app_server_port_number/db2wa`

7 For example, `http://server_name:7001/db2wa`.

7 **Deploying DB2 Web Tools on other application servers**

7 This task describes how to deploy and configure DB2 Web Tools (including the
7 Web Command Center and the Web Health Center) on other application servers
7 such as Tomcat 4.0 and Macromedia JRun 4.0. These tools run as Web applications
7 on a Web server to provide access to DB2 servers through Web browsers.

7 **Prerequisites:**

7 Before you install DB2 Web Tools, ensure that you have:

- 7 • An application server, such as:
 - 7 – Tomcat 4.0 Servlet/JSP Container (<http://jakarta.apache.org/tomcat/>)
 - 7 – Macromedia JRun 4.0
- 7 • IBM DB2 Administration Client Version 8.
- 7 • A Web browser that is compliant with HTML 4.0.

7 **Restrictions:**

7 The following restrictions apply to the DB2 Web Tools deployment:

- 7 • Multiple language and code page conversions between the middle tier and DB2
7 servers are not supported. Although the language for the server is what is
7 displayed, some characters might appear incorrectly.
- 7 • In order to see the health alerts for databases, table spaces, and table space
7 containers in the Web Health Center, you need to ensure that the databases are
7 cataloged on the Web application server.
- 7 • The use of the Web browser buttons (**Stop**, **Back**, **History**) are not supported
7 while using DB2 Web Tools.
- 7 • If you are using Netscape Navigator 4 with DB2 Web Tools, your browser
7 display might not refresh properly. If you experience this problem, you can

7 refresh your display by minimizing the window and then bringing it back. You
7 can also refresh the display by hiding the browser window under another
7 window, and then bringing it to the foreground again.

- 7 • To assign your own alias to any DB2 UDB system, instance node, or database,
7 you must explicitly catalog it on the application server using the DB2
7 Configuration Assistant or the DB2 Control Center.
- 7 • During their first startup, the DB2 Web Tools require a significantly longer time
7 to initialize than for subsequent startups. Most of this wait is due to the
7 automatic catalog process. If you do not want to use the automatic catalog
7 functionality, you can shorten the time you must wait by turning the automatic
7 cataloging off through the servlet configuration.

7 **Note:** The servlet configuration parameters are available in the deployment
7 descriptor file `web.xml`. The parameter names and default values are
7 subject to change with each release. Some application servers might allow
7 changes to these parameters, either through their interface or by editing
7 the `web.xml` file directly.

- 7 • The output (results) buffer has an absolute maximum size of 1MB when using a
7 desktop or laptop browser, even if it is configured for more. In the case of PDA
7 Web browsers, the limit is 1KB.
- 7 • On Linux, UNIX, and Windows operating systems, the DB2 Web Tools
7 automatically discover and catalog any systems on the same TCP/IP net as the
7 application server. Systems on the same TCP/IP net have the same first three
7 digits in their IP address. The tools try to catalog the DB2 UDB system nodes
7 using the original remote TCP/IP host name. If there is name duplication, the
7 tools assign a unique random name. You must explicitly catalog any other DB2
7 administration servers on the application server if you want them to be
7 accessible. This includes any servers using TCP/IP that are not on the same
7 TCP/IP net as the application server, as well as any servers that do not use
7 TCP/IP.
- 7 • On Linux, UNIX, and Windows operating systems, the DB2 Web Tools attempt
7 to automatically discover and catalog any DB2 UDB instance nodes and
7 databases that reside on cataloged DB2 UDB systems. It is possible to configure
7 a remote instance for multiple communication protocols, therefore, the catalog
7 will contain a separate node entry for each protocol supported by an
7 automatically cataloged instance. If there is name duplication, the tools assign a
7 unique random name.

7 **Procedure:**

7 The following are the procedures for installing DB2 Web Tools using application
7 servers such as Tomcat 4.0 or Macromedia JRun 4.0:

7 **Tomcat 4.0**

- 7 1. Prepare the Tomcat 4.0 configuration file (CLASSPATH) by completing
7 the following:
 - 7 a. Create a new environment/system variable **CATALINA_HOME** to
7 contain the path (root directory) to Tomcat 4.0. For example,
7 `D:\jakarta-tomcat-4.0.3`.
 - 7 b. Confirm that the Tomcat Servlet/JSP Container is functional:
 - 7 1) Start Tomcat by running **startup.bat** from Tomcat's `bin` directory.
 - 7 2) Access the main Web page **http://localhost:8080/** through a Web
7 browser.

2. Deploy the DB2 Web Tools into the Tomcat Servlet/JSP Container by locating the DB2 Web Tools installation path (i.e. `Sql11ib\tools\web\db2wa.war`) and copying **db2wa.war** into Tomcat's deployment directory (i.e. Tomcat's `webapps` directory).
3. Invoke DB2 Web Tools on Tomcat Servlet/JSP Container by completing the following:
 - a. Open a DB2 Command Window and change the directory to Tomcat's `bin` directory.
 - b. Start Tomcat using **startup.bat** and confirm that a new directory (**db2wa**) has been added into the `webapps` directory.

Note: Running **startup.bat** from a command prompt window would not set `DB2PATH`. In order to enable `DB2PATH` being set, the `CLASSPATH` line needs to be changed to explicitly reference the DB2 UDB installation path rather than the `%DB2PATH%` environment variable.
 - c. The DB2 Web Tools enterprise application is located at **http://localhost:8080/db2wa** and can be accessed with an HTML 4.0 compliant Web browser.

JRun

1. Prepare a new application server for DB2 Web Tools by completing the following tasks:

Recommendation:

Creating a new application server is recommended, but not mandatory. For testing purposes, the default server can be used, and only the configuration of the JVM classpath and the deployment is required.

 - a. Start the JRun Management Console and login as the administrator of the application server.
 - b. Create a new application server using **Create New Server** located at the top right of the main page. Do not change the host name selection from `localhost`.
 - c. Enter the new server name (**DB2WebToolsServer**) and click the JRun Server Directory. The value is automatically filled in.
 - d. Click the **Create Server** button.
 - e. Record the generated values or enter new values for:
 - JNDI Provider URL
 - Web Server Port Number. This would be the value to be used in the URL for the DB2 Web Tools (i.e. `http://localhost:web_server_port_number/db2wa`)
 - Web Connector Proxy Port Number
 - f. Click **update port numbers** if necessary and close the window.
2. Deploy DB2 Web Tools on the JRun application server by completing the following tasks:
 - a. Start the application server selected to host DB2 Web Tools Web application (`DB2WebToolsServer`, default or any other except `admin`).
 - b. Click **Web Applications** and then click **Add**.
 - c. Browse the **Deployment File** section to select the `Sql11ib\tools\web\db2wa.war` file in the DB2 UDB installation path.
 - d. Click **Deploy** and confirm that the context path is `/db2wa`.

- e. Select the application server and confirm that the DB2 Web Tools application appears in the **Web Applications** section. Do *not* click **Apply** on this page.
- f. Select the **Home** link from the upper left panel of the main page.
- g. Restart the application server from the **Home** view that contains the DB2 Web Tools (**DB2WebToolsServer**).

The DB2 Web Tools enterprise application is located at `http://localhost:your_web_server_port_numer/db2wa` and can be accessed with an HTML 4.0 compliant Web browser.

Direct I/O on block devices (Linux)

Direct I/O is now supported on both file systems and block devices for distributions of Linux with a 2.6 kernel. Direct I/O on block devices is an alternative way to specify device containers for direct disk access or for raw I/O. The performance of Direct I/O is equivalent to the raw character device method. DB2 Universal Database (UDB) enables Direct I/O while opening the table space when the CREATE TABLESPACE statement specifies a block device name for the container path. Previously, the same performance was achieved using the raw I/O method, which required binding the block device to a character device using the **raw** utility.

Table 34. Comparison of direct I/O and raw I/O

Direct I/O (new method)	Raw I/O (old method)
CREATE TABLESPACE dms1 MANAGED BY DATABASE USING (DEVICE '/dev/sda5' 11170736)	CREATE TABLESPACE dms1 MANAGED BY DATABASE USING (DEVICE '/dev/raw/raw1' 11170736)

Although the raw I/O method is still supported by DB2 UDB, it has been deprecated and support for it might be removed from future kernels.

Recommendation:

If you want to exploit direct disk access, create your DMS device containers using Direct I/O to avoid future migration issues.

Note: Direct I/O is not supported by DB2 UDB on Linux/390.

DB2 Information Center daemon (Linux and UNIX)

The DB2 Information Center daemon is responsible for the control of the DB2 documentation server. The daemon, which is part of the DB2 Information Center installation, is composed of two files:

- db2icd – the initialization script
- db2ic.conf – the configuration file

These files are installed in the following locations:

```
AIX    /etc/db2icd
        /var/db2/v81/db2ic.conf

HP     /sbin/init.d/db2icd
        /var/opt/db2/v81/db2ic.conf

Solaris Operating Environment
        /etc/init.d/db2icd
```

7 /var/db2/v81/db2ic.conf
7 Linux /etc/init.d/db2icd
7 /var/db2/v81/db2ic.conf

7 Starting or stopping the Information Center daemon (AIX, Solaris 7 Operating Environment, HP, Linux)

7 The only time you should need to start or stop the daemon manually is when you
7 want to change the configuration variables for the daemon. Normally, the daemon
7 is started at system startup, according to the run levels created during the
7 installation of the DB2 Information Center.

7 Procedure:

7 To stop and start the Information Center daemon:

- 7 1. Halt the daemon if it is already running. At a command line, enter:

7 `INIT_DIR/db2icd stop`

7 where `INIT_DIR` is the installation directory of the `db2icd` file listed previously.

- 7 2. Change any of the variables for the daemon by editing the `db2ic.conf` file.
7 Currently, you can modify the TCP port number where the documentation is
7 available, and the location of the temporary workspace used by the daemon
7 while it is running.

- 7 3. Start the daemon. At a command line, enter:

7 `INIT_DIR/db2icd start`

7 where `INIT_DIR` is the installation directory of the `db2icd` file listed previously.

7 When the daemon starts, it uses the new environment variables.

7 There is also an option to shut down and restart the daemon immediately. At a
7 command line, enter:

7 `INIT_DIR/db2icd restart`

7 where `INIT_DIR` is the installation directory of the `db2icd` file listed previously.

7 You can check the status of the daemon at any time. At a command line, enter:

7 `INIT_DIR/db2icd status`

7 where `INIT_DIR` is the installation directory of the `db2icd` file listed previously. The
7 daemon returns the current status, and displays the ID of the daemon process or
7 processes if it is active.

8 Response file keywords and sample files

8 To install the DB2 Information Center Version 8.2 using a response file, use the
8 following information:

8 Response file keyword (PROD)

8 `INFORMATION_CENTER`

8 Response file name

8 `db2doce.rsp`

Response file installation error codes

The following error code is for Windows only and is not applicable to Linux and UNIX operating systems.

3010 The installation is successful, however a system restart is required to complete the installation.

Required user accounts for installation of DB2 servers (Windows)

Increase quotas

The *Increase quotas* user right has been changed to *Adjust memory quotas for a process* on the Windows XP and Windows Server 2003 operating systems.

User rights granted by the DB2 installer - Debug Programs

The DB2 installation program does not grant the Debug Programs user right. The DB2 installer grants the following user rights:

- Act as part of the operating system
- Create token object
- Lock pages in memory
- Log on as a service
- Increase quotas
- Replace a process level token

Asynchronous I/O support (Linux)

Asynchronous I/O (AIO) support is now available on Linux (2.6 and some 2.4 kernels) for raw devices and O_DIRECT file systems. AIO improves page cleaner performance. You can enable or disable AIO on Linux by issuing the **db2set** command.

To use AIO, users must install libaio-0.3.98 or later and have a kernel that supports AIO. Users must also run the **db2set DB2LINUXAIO=true** command and restart DB2 Universal Database.

db2ln command modified to create DB2 UDB 64-bit library links (Linux and UNIX)

In previous levels of DB2 Universal Database (UDB) Version 8, the **db2ln** command created certain DB2 links under /usr/lib and /usr/include. On platforms where both 32-bit and 64-bit DB2 UDB instances are supported, these links point to library files or include files under DB2DIR/lib64 or DB2DIR/include64 by default, where DB2DIR is the directory where DB2 UDB Version 8 is installed. If the default is not desired, you can specify the bit width by running the **db2ln** command with the -w flag:

```
db2ln -w 32|64
```

This prevents DB2 UDB 32-bit instances from coexisting with 64-bit instances on some platforms.

Starting with DB2 UDB Version 8.2, the **db2ln** command creates DB2 64-bit library links on those platforms in appropriate directories. In this case, the -w flag is only used for populating /usr/include. When the **db2ln** command creates the links for

8 DB2 UDB library files, both 32-bit and 64-bit links are created on supported
8 platforms. This allows both 32-bit instances and 64-bit instances to exist and run at
8 the same time.

8 On some Linux distributions, the `libc` development rpm comes with the
8 `/usr/lib/libdb2.so` or `/usr/lib64/libdb2.so` library. This library is used for
8 Sleepycat Software's Berkeley DB implementation and is not associated with IBM's
8 DB2 UDB. However, this file prevents the `db2ln` command and the `db2rmln`
8 command from functioning. The `db2ln` command does not overwrite the file and
8 the `db2rmln` command does not remove the file. In this case, to compile
8 applications using DB2 UDB, compiling and linking processes need to provide a
8 full path to DB2 UDB's headers and libraries, respectively. This is the
8 recommended method because it allows compiling and linking against multiple
8 releases of DB2 UDB on the same computer.

8 See the DB2 UDB Version 8.2 *Installation and Configuration* manual for details about
8 restrictions using the `db2ln` command.

Query Patroller

Query class behavior update

9 A warning message is returned when one of the following tasks is performed
9 through the Query Patroller Center or Query Patroller command line:

- 9 • Adding a query class
- 9 • Removing a query class
- 9 • Updating the maximum cost of a query for a query class

9 The warning message is:

```
9 DQP1024W Creation, change, or removal of a query class will not  
9 take effect until the Query Patroller server is restarted.
```

9 Similarly, the *DB2 Query Patroller Guide: Installation, Administration, and Usage*,
9 Version 8.2, states that you must restart the Query Patroller server after creating,
9 changing, or removing query classes for your changes to take effect.

9 The message and the statement in the guide are no longer accurate. The three
9 query class tasks listed previously will take effect immediately unless there are
9 queued or running queries. If there are queued or running queries, including
9 newly submitted queries, the query class changes will take effect when the queued
9 or running queries complete. If you do not want to wait for all queued and
9 running queries to complete, you must restart the Query Patroller server.

9 **Note:** As with earlier versions of Query Patroller, updating the maximum number
9 of queries for a query class always takes effect immediately.

Definition updates for managed query states

8 The *Canceled* and *Done* query status meanings are updated as follows:

Canceled

8 The query was canceled, through either the Query Patroller Center or the
8 Query Patroller command line, by the administrator, submitter, or an
8 operator whose profile has the MONITORING privilege with edit
8 authority. Only *running*, *held*, *released*, and *queued* queries can be *canceled*.

8 **Done** The query completed successfully.

Note: Although the query itself completed without error, the application may receive an error if the completion was caused by an external event, such as a **DB2 force** application.

Create Explain tables before running Query Patroller historical data generator

When running the historical data generator for Query Patroller, if the Explain tables do not already exist, the generator will create them for you. However, it is strongly recommended that you create the Explain tables before running the historical data generator. When you create the Explain tables be sure you create them on the same partition. Actively creating the Explain tables on the same partition improves the performance of the Explain facility. This improvement increases the performance of the historical data generator.

Checking Query Patroller log files for historical analysis

If the **Explain Run** column of the Query Activity over Time (Historical Analysis) report shows a status of **Ran unsuccessfully** for a query, historical data has not been generated for that query. Therefore, the query will not appear in any historical analysis reports or graphs. As documented in Version 8, to determine why the query was unsuccessful, you can examine the qpuser.log file.

In addition to examining the qpuser.log file, you should examine the qpdiag.log file.

Abnormal shutdown of the historical data generator

If you run the historical data generator and shut it down in an abnormal way, you will receive an error the next time you attempt to run the historical data generator. Examples of abnormal shutdown include:

- DB2 Universal Database stops unexpectedly
- Issuing a db2stop force command
- Issuing a killdb2 command

When the historical data generator shuts down abnormally, you must issue the following command before attempting to rerun the historical data generator:

```
qp -d database generate historical_data stop
```

where *database* identifies the database that the command is being run against.

Dynamic query class updates

Certain query class operations no longer require Query Patroller to be stopped and restarted to take effect.

In the table that follows, an active query is a query whose status is Running or Queued.

Table 35. Conditions for query class changes to take effect

Nature of change	Conditions for change to take effect
Addition, removal, or update of a query class.	If there are no active queries, changes take effect immediately.
An update to a query class that involves only a change to the Maximum number of queries .	Takes effect immediately, even if there are active queries.

Table 35. Conditions for query class changes to take effect (continued)

Nature of change	Conditions for change to take effect
An update to a query class that involves only a change to the Maximum cost of a query .	If there are active queries, the update takes effect when either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Query Patroller is stopped and restarted. • There are no more active queries. <p>Note: When there is a change pending against Maximum cost of a query, subsequent query class updates of any kind will not take effect until one of the two previous conditions is met.</p>
Addition or removal of a query class.	If there are active queries, the addition or removal takes effect when either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Query Patroller is stopped and restarted. • There are no more active queries.

Nested query behavior

Nested queries cannot be queued. Instead, a nested query will run immediately if it exceeds a threshold that would normally cause it to be queued.

Limitations by SQL statement type

Contrary to previous documentation, the queries with the following statements can be queued:

- Queries containing static SQL with host variables
- Queries containing an identity value function (IDENTITY_VAL_LOCAL) or a sequence value function, such as NEXT VALUE FOR or PREVIOUS VALUE FOR

Resolution limitation when using the Terminal Services Client

When using the Terminal Services Client at resolution 640x480 to connect to a remote desktop that is running the Query Patroller Center, the Submission Preferences window might appear blank. For the Submission Preferences window to display properly, you must use a resolution higher than 640x480.

New group support for query submissions

Starting in Version 8.2, DB2 Universal Database (UDB) supports user groups beyond operating system groups. Therefore, there is a slight change in the **Submitter Profile to Use** drop-down list in the Query Submission Preferences window of the Query Patroller Center.

If you are logged in, but do not have either DBADM authority or Edit privilege for Query Patroller user administration, you can only add or update a submission preference for yourself. In this case, the **Submitter Profile to Use** drop-down list contains existing submitter profiles of the DB2 UDB groups that you belong to, instead of just the operating system groups that you belong to.

If you are logged in, and have either DBADM authority or Edit privilege for Query Patroller user administration, you can add or update submission preferences for other users. In this case, the **Submitter Profile to Use** drop-down list contains all existing group submitter profiles.

Query Patroller schedule limitations

When working with schedules in the Query Patroller Center, you can use the Schedule window to save schedules to a file and import them later. If you have a schedule that you saved using FixPak 6 or earlier, you cannot import the schedule using Version 8.2 or later. This limitation is due to the change in serialization between JDK levels introduced with DB2 UDB Version 8.2.

Authorization required to use RUN IN BACKGROUND QUERY command

To run the RUN IN BACKGROUND QUERY command, you must be the submitter who submitted the query originally.

Creating an alias for a result table

As of Query Patroller Version 8.1 FixPak 5, Query Patroller stopped creating result tables in the schema that matched the authorization ID of the submitter of the query. Instead, Query Patroller started creating result tables in a common DB2QPRT schema. To allow result tables to be referenced using the schema of the submitter, Query Patroller Version 8.2 introduces an option to automatically create an alias for each new result table that Query Patroller creates. The result table is created in the DB2QPRT schema and the alias is created in a schema that matches the submitter's authorization ID.

To turn this option on or off, issue the UPDATE QP_SYSTEM command with the CREATE_RESULT_TABLE_ALIASES option:

```
➤ UPDATE QP_SYSTEM USING _____
                        |
                        | CREATE_RESULT_TABLE_ALIASES
                        | _____
                        |         |
                        |         | 'Y'
                        |         | _____
                        |         | |
                        |         | | 'N'
                        |         | | _____
                        |         | |
                        |         | _____
```

Removing orphaned result table aliases

Aliases created with CREATE_RESULT_TABLE_ALIASES option are automatically dropped when a result table is dropped. However, there are two situations in which a result table may be dropped without the corresponding alias being dropped.

- When the result table is dropped manually without using the qp command line or Query Patroller Center.
- When the result table is dropped using the qp command line or Query Patroller Center under the authority of an operator who is not the submitter of the query and does not have DBADM authority.

To clean up aliases that have no corresponding result tables, a new command, REMOVE RESULT_TABLE_ALIASES, has been created. This command is automatically executed whenever result tables are purged as part of the Query Patroller scheduled result table purging process. The REMOVE RESULT_TABLE_ALIASES command obtains the list of aliases to purge using the following query:

```
with a as (select tabschema, tabname from syscat.tables
           where type = 'A' and tabname like 'QUERY%_RESULTS'),
t as (select tabname from syscat.tables
      where type = 'T' and tabname like 'QUERY%_RESULTS')
select all tabschema, tabname from a
where not exists (select * from t where t.tabname=a.tabname)
```

7 **Prerequisites:**

7 You must have DBADM authority.

7 **Procedure:**

- 7 1. Issue the REMOVE RESULT_TABLE_ALIASES command

7 This command removes all aliases that exist after having their corresponding result
7 tables dropped. The aliases were originally created by Query Patroller for result
7 tables.

7 **Command syntax:**

7 ▶▶—REMOVE RESULT_TABLE_ALIASES—◀◀

7 **Note:** For information about entering Query Patroller commands using the
7 command line interface, and general syntax for Query Patroller commands,
7 see the Query Patroller command line interface.

7 **Fenced user ID requires write access qpdiaq.log file and path**

8 Query Patroller uses some fenced stored procedures which may log entries to the
8 qpdiaq.log file. Therefore, the fenced user ID must have access to write to the
8 qpdiaq.log file and the path where the qpdiaq.log file resides.

Quick Beginnings

9 **Clarification of DB2 UDB client support**

9 The "DB2 clients" topic in the 8.1 version of the *DB2 Quick Beginnings for Clients*
9 guide states the following:

9 DB2 clients can connect to DB2 servers two releases later or one release
9 earlier than the client's release level, as well as to servers at the same release
9 level.

9 An amendment to that statement is as follows:

9 While connections from Version N clients to Version N + 2 servers is possible
9 in some environments, this is a supported configuration as long as Version N
9 is in service. Once Version N is withdrawn from service, this configuration is
9 no longer supported.

9 DB2 Version 6 clients connecting to a DB2 Version 8 server is no longer
9 supported because DB2 Version 6 has been withdrawn from service.

9 **Modifying kernel parameters (Linux)**

9 Before installing DB2 UDB, you should consider updating your Linux kernel
9 parameters. DB2 Universal Database (UDB) automatically raises the IPC limits
9 where necessary. You might want to raise these limits higher depending on your
9 particular needs.

9 **Prerequisites:**

9 You must have root authority to modify kernel parameters.

9 On some distributions you might be required to add `sysctl -p` in one of
9 the system initialization files, such as `rc.local`, so that kernel parameters
9 are set after each restart.

9 **Modifying kernel parameters (Solaris Operating Environment)**

9 The following information is an amendment to the "Modifying kernel parameters
9 (Solaris Operating Environment)" topic in the *Quick Beginnings for DB2 Servers*
9 guide:

9 For DB2 Universal Database (UDB) to operate properly, it is recommended that
9 you update your system's kernel configuration parameters. You can use the
9 **db2osconf** utility to suggest recommended kernel parameters.

9 To use the **db2osconf** command, you must first install DB2 UDB. The **db2osconf**
9 utility can only be run from `$DB2DIR/bin`.

9 You must restart your system after modifying kernel parameters.

9 **DB2 Universal Database Express Edition Version 8.2 Basics 9 manual available for download**

9 IBM DB2 Universal Database Express (DB2 UDB Express) is the newest member of
9 the DB2 Universal Database Version 8 product family. It combines the power,
9 function, and reliability of the IBM award-winning DB2 UDB relational database
9 with simplicity in packaging, installation, and deployment at a minimal investment
9 cost to meet the data management needs of small and medium businesses.

9 DB2 UDB Express is designed for customers with minimal in-house database skills
9 who need an easy-to-install database integrated into their application software
9 solutions. It is a multi-user version of DB2 UDB that supports local and remote
9 applications in stand-alone and local area network (LAN) environments.

9 For further information on DB2 UDB Express, download *Quick Beginnings for DB2
9 Express Edition* and *DB2 Universal Database Express Edition Version 8.2 Basics* from
9 the DB2 UDB product manuals Web page at
9 <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/udb/support/manualsv8.html>

7 **Verifying that your databases are ready for migration**

7 The following prerequisites section is documented in the 8.2 version of the topic
7 that explains how to verify that your databases are ready for migration:

7 **Prerequisites**

7 Ensure that the `migration.log` file, found in the instance owner's home
7 directory, contains the following text: Version of DB2CKMIG being run:
7 VERSION 8.

7 This prerequisite is in fact a post-migration step performed at the end of the
7 procedure.

7 **Common Criteria certification for DB2 UDB**

7 The authoritative information for DB2 UDB configurations that have been certified
7 for Common Criteria can be found at <http://niap.nist.gov/cc-scheme>

Spatial Extender

Verifying the Spatial Extender installation

The runGseDemo sample program can be used to become familiar with application programming for DB2 Spatial Extender. For a description of the steps that the sample program takes to create a spatially-enabled database and perform spatial analysis on data in that database, refer to the topic titled "The DB2 Spatial Extender sample program". This topic is in the Information Center and the *Spatial Extender and Geodetic Extender User's Guide and Reference*.

DB2 Spatial Extender provides another sample program, seBankDemoRunBankDemo, that demonstrates how to add spatial capabilities to an existing information system.

For more information about both sample programs, see the README files in the following directories:

Windows

```
~\sql11ib\samples\spatial  
~\sql11ib\samples\spatial\bank
```

Linux and UNIX

```
~/sql11ib/spatial  
~/sql11ib/spatial/bank
```

SQL Administrative Routines

Incorrect column name documented in result set for SNAP_GET_DYN_SQL table function

The "SNAP_GET_DYN_SQL table function" topic in the DB2 Information Center Version 8.2.2 incorrectly documents the result set for the SNAP_GET_DYN_SQL table function.

One of the columns is incorrectly documented as STMT_TXT.

The correct name for the output column is STMT_TEXT.

Snapshot monitor table functions have version-specific views

Version-specific views have been defined on the following snapshot monitor table functions, introduced in DB2 Universal Database Version 8.2.2:

- SNAP_GET_CONTAINER
- SNAP_GET_DB
- SNAP_GET_DYN_SQL
- SNAP_GET_STO_PATHS
- SNAP_GET_TAB
- SNAP_GET_TBSP
- SNAP_GET_TBSP_PART

The version-specific views are as follows:

- SYSCATV82.SNAPCONT
- SYSCATV82.SNAPDB
- SYSCATV82.SNAPDYNSQL

- SYSCATV82.SNAPSTOPATHS
- SYSCATV82.SNAPTAB
- SYSCATV82.SNAPTBSpace
- SYSCATV82.SNAPTBSpacePART

Because there is no guarantee that the result tables from the snapshot monitor table functions will remain unchanged from release to release, it is recommended that you use the version-specific views if you want guaranteed result tables. Each view contains all of the columns from the result table of its associated snapshot monitor table function.

GET_DB_CONFIG procedure requires an 8K minimum page size for a user temporary table space

The GET_DB_CONFIG procedure requires a user temporary table space with a page size of at least 8K.

The documented example that shows you how to use the GET_DB_CONFIG procedure should be replaced by the following example.

Using the command line processor (CLP), change the value of the *logretain* and the *userexit* database configuration parameters. Retrieve the original (on disk) and updated (in memory) values by calling the GET_DB_CONFIG procedure.

```
UPDATE DB CFG USING LOGRETAIN RECOVERY USEREXIT YES
CALL SYSPROC.GET_DB_CONFIG()
```

The following is an example of partial output from this procedure call.

Result set 1

DBCONFIG_TYPE	LOGRETAIN	USEREXIT
0	1	1
1	0	0

2 record(s) selected.

Return Status = 0

SQL Reference

EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC: A new Explain table

The EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC table contains an entry for each diagnostic message produced for a particular instance of an explained statement in the EXPLAIN_STATEMENT table.

The EXPLAIN_GET_MSGS table function queries the EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC and EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC_DATA Explain tables and returns formatted messages.

Table 36. EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC table

Column name	Data type	Nullable	Key ¹	Description
EXPLAIN_REQUESTER	VARCHAR(128)	No	PK, FK	Authorization ID of initiator of this Explain request.
EXPLAIN_TIME	TIMESTAMP	No	PK, FK	Time of initiation for Explain request.
SOURCE_NAME	VARCHAR(128)	No	PK, FK	Name of the package running when the dynamic statement was explained or name of the source file when the static SQL was explained.

9 *Table 36. EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC table (continued)*

9 Column name	Data type	Nullable	Key ¹	Description
9 SOURCE_SCHEMA	VARCHAR(128)	No	PK, FK	Schema, or qualifier, of source of Explain request.
9 SOURCE_VERSION	VARCHAR(64)	No	PK, FK	Version of the source of the Explain request.
9 EXPLAIN_LEVEL	CHAR(1)	No	PK, FK	Level of Explain information for which this row is relevant.
9				Valid values are:
9				• O: Original Text (as entered by user)
9				• P: PLAN SELECTION
9 STMTNO	INTEGER	No	PK, FK	Statement number within package to which this Explain information is related. Set to 1 for dynamic Explain SQL statements. For static SQL statements, this value is the same as the value used for the SYSCAT.STATEMENTS catalog view.
9 SECTNO	INTEGER	No	PK, FK	Section number within package that contains this SQL statement. For dynamic Explain SQL statements, this is the section number used to hold the section for this statement at runtime. For static SQL statements, this value is the same as the value used for the SYSCAT.STATEMENTS catalog view.
9 DIAGNOSTIC_ID	INTEGER	No	PK	ID of the diagnostic for a particular instance of a statement in the EXPLAIN_STATEMENT table.
9 CODE	INTEGER	No	No	A unique number assigned to each diagnostic message. The number can be used by a message API to retrieve the full text of the diagnostic message.

9 ¹. PK means that the column is part of a primary key; FK means that the column is part of a foreign key.

EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC_DATA: A new Explain table

The EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC_DATA table contains message tokens for specific diagnostic messages that are recorded in the EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC table. The message tokens provide additional information that is specific to the execution of the SQL statement that generated the message.

The EXPLAIN_GET_MSGS table function queries the EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC and EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC_DATA Explain tables, and returns formatted messages.

9 *Table 37. EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC_DATA Table*

9 Column name	Data type	Nullable	Key ¹	Description
9 EXPLAIN_REQUESTER	VARCHAR(128)	No	FK	Authorization ID of initiator of this Explain request.
9 EXPLAIN_TIME	TIMESTAMP	No	FK	Time of initiation for Explain request.
9 SOURCE_NAME	VARCHAR(128)	No	FK	Name of the package running when the dynamic statement was explained or name of the source file when the static SQL was explained.
9 SOURCE_SCHEMA	VARCHAR(128)	No	FK	Schema, or qualifier, of source of Explain request.
9 SOURCE_VERSION	VARCHAR(64)	No	FK	Version of the source of the Explain request.
9 EXPLAIN_LEVEL	CHAR(1)	No	FK	Level of Explain information for which this row is relevant.
9				Valid values are:
9				• O: Original Text (as entered by user)
9				• P: PLAN SELECTION

9 *Table 37. EXPLAIN_DIAGNOSTIC_DATA Table (continued)*

9 Column name	Data type	Nullable	Key ¹	Description
9 STMTNO	INTEGER	No	FK	Statement number within package to which this Explain information is related. Set to 1 for dynamic Explain SQL statements. For static SQL statements, this value is the same as the value used for the SYSCAT.STATEMENTS catalog view.
9 SECTNO	INTEGER	No	FK	Section number within package that contains this SQL statement. For dynamic Explain SQL statements, this is the section number used to hold the section for this statement at runtime. For static SQL statements, this value is the same as the value used for the SYSCAT.STATEMENTS catalog view.
9 DIAGNOSTIC_ID	INTEGER	No	PK	ID of the diagnostic for a particular instance of a statement in the EXPLAIN_STATEMENT table.
9 ORDINAL	INTEGER	No	No	Position of token in the full message text.
9 TOKEN	VARCHAR(1000)	Yes	No	Message token to be inserted into the full message text; might be truncated.
9 TOKEN_LONG	BLOB(3M)	Yes	No	More detailed information, if available.

9 1. PK means that the column is part of a primary key; FK means that the column is part of a foreign key.

9 Schema used by the Explain facility

7 The Explain facility uses the following IDs as the schema when qualifying Explain tables that it is populating:

- 7 • The session authorization ID for dynamic SQL
- 7 • The statement authorization ID for static SQL

7 The schema can be associated with a set of Explain tables, or aliases that point to a set of Explain tables under a different schema.

7 If no Explain tables are found under the schema, the Explain facility checks for Explain tables under the SYSTOOLS schema and attempts to use those tables.

String representations of datetime values

Time strings:

A string representation of a time is a string that starts with a digit and has a length of at least 4 characters. Trailing blanks may be included; a leading zero may be omitted from the hour part of the time, and seconds may be omitted entirely. If seconds are omitted, an implicit specification of 0 seconds is assumed. Thus, 13:30 is equivalent to 13:30:00.

Valid string formats for times are listed in the following table. Each format is identified by name and associated abbreviation.

Table 38. Formats for String Representations of Times

Format Name	Abbreviation	Time Format	Example
International Standards Organization	ISO	hh.mm.ss	13.30.05
IBM USA standard	USA	hh:mm AM or PM	1:30 PM

Table 38. Formats for String Representations of Times (continued)

Format Name	Abbreviation	Time Format	Example
IBM European standard	EUR	hh.mm.ss	13.30.05
Japanese Industrial Standard Christian Era	JIS	hh:mm:ss	13:30:05
Site-defined	LOC	Depends on the territory code of the application	–

7 Starting with Version 8.2, "AM" and "PM" can be represented in lowercase or
7 uppercase.

System monitor

Health indicators summary

9 In the "Health indicators summary" topic in the Version 8.2.2 DB2 Information
9 Center, the identifier for the Database automatic storage utilization health indicator
9 is incorrectly documented as *db.db_auto_storage_util*.

9 The correct identifier for the Database automatic storage utilization health indicator
9 is *db.auto_storage_util*.

Decoupled applications list without connection concentrator enabled

7 It is possible to see decoupled applications when issuing the **list applications**
7 command even without connection concentrator enabled.

Progress monitoring of the runtime rollback process

7 Progress monitoring of runtime rollback provides progress information of rollback
7 events using application snapshots. Rollback events are of two types:

Unit of work rollback

7 Includes explicit (user invoked) and implicit (forced) rollback of the entire
7 transaction.

Savepoint rollback

7 Includes statement and application level savepoints. Nested savepoints are
7 considered a single unit, using the outermost savepoint.

7 The information provided is the start time of the rollback event, the total work to
7 be done, and completed work. The work metric is bytes.

7 Total Work units is the range in the log stream that needs to be rolled back for the
7 transaction or savepoint.

7 Completed Work units shows the relative position in the log stream that has been
7 rolled back.

7 Updates to Completed Work are made after every log record is processed. Updates
7 are not performed evenly because log records vary in size.

7 **Sample output from GET SNAPSHOT FOR ALL APPLICATIONS command:**

```
7           Application Snapshot
7
7           Application handle       = 6
7           Application status       = Rollback Active
7           Start Time               = 02/20/2004 12:49:27.713720
7           Completed Work           = 1024000 bytes
7           Total Work               = 4084000 bytes
```

```
7           Application Snapshot
7
7           Application handle       = 10
7           Application status       = Rollback to Savepoint
7           Start Time               = 02/20/2004 12:49:32.832410
7           Completed Work           = 102400 bytes
7           Total Work               = 2048000 bytes
```

7 **Note:** If rollback is not active during a snapshot, then rollback elements will not be
7 displayed.

7 XML Extender

8 Decomposing documents larger than 1 MB

8 You do not need to drop and recreate the stored procedure dxxShredXML to
8 decompose documents that are larger than 1 MB. To decompose documents that
8 are larger than 1 MB, invoke the stored procedure dxxShredXML100MB, which can
8 shred documents up to 100 MB. Although dxxShredXML100MB can handle large
8 documents, you might need to increase other resources for the stored procedure to
8 complete successfully. To invoke the stored procedure through the sample program
8 dxxshrd, use the new flag "-large". For example:
8
8 dxxshrd -large mydb xxx.xml

8 If your version of DB2 Universal Database is earlier than Version 8 FixPak 6, you
8 must run dxxMigv to migrate XML Extender to the current level to run the new
8 stored procedure.

7 Configuring MQ XML UDFs with XML Extender

7 You must configure and enable MQ XML user-defined functions (UDFs) before
7 you can use them.

7 Prerequisites:

7 Install the UDFs by following the procedure in the "Installing DB2 WebSphere MQ
7 functions" topic, which is found either in the Information Center or the *IBM DB2
7 Information Integrator Application Developer's Guide*.

7 Procedure:

7 To configure and enable MQ XML UDFs with XML Extender:

- 7 1. Open a DB2 command prompt window.
- 7 2. Connect to the database that will use the MQ XML UDFs by entering the
7 following command:
7 db2 connect to <database>
- 7 3. Change to the bnd directory within the path where you installed DB2 Universal
7 Database, such as:
 - 7 • SQLLIB/bnd (Linux and UNIX)

- 7 • C:\Program Files\IBM\SQLLIB\bnd (Windows)
- 7 4. Bind the database to XML Extender using the following command:
7 db2 bind @dbxxbind.lst
- 7 5. Bind the database for XML Extender to use the MQ XML UDFs using the
7 following command:
7 db2 bind mqxml.bnd
- 7 6. Bind the database to the CLI using the following command:
7 db2 bind @db2cli.lst

7 **XML Extender environment variable**

7 **DB2DXX_MIN_TMPFILE_SIZE**

7 DB2 XML Extender can place large documents in temporary files to avoid using a
7 great amount of memory during processing. On systems with large amounts of
7 physical memory, you can avoid moving documents to temporary files, reducing
7 the amount of Input/Output activity. The environment variable
7 DB2DXX_MIN_TMPFILE_SIZE instructs XML Extender to use memory buffers,
7 instead of temporary files, for processing documents smaller than the specified
7 value. The variable is applicable only on the server. If multiple physical nodes
7 participate in a partitioned environment, the variable can be set differently on each
7 node, accurately reflecting the amount of memory installed on each computer. If
7 the environment variable is not set, documents larger than 128 KB will
7 automatically be placed into temporary files during processing. Documents smaller
7 than 128 KB will be processed in memory.

7 **DB2XML.XMLVarchar UDT redefinition**

7 You can redefine the user-defined type (UDT) DB2XML.XMLVarchar up to 32 KB.
7 To change the size of an XMLVarchar UDT, create the UDT before you enable the
7 database for XML Extender.

7 For more information, see *DB2 XML Extender Administration and Programming*.

Appendix A. DB2 UDB FixPak CD directory structure

Windows operating systems

The files on the FixPak CD are located as follows:

Table 39. Windows files

Files	Location
DB2 product files:	x:\db2
Installation Prerequisites:	x:\doc\<<language>\install.txt
Installation Prerequisites (HTML):	x:\doc\<<language>\install.htm
License files:	x:\db2\license
Release Notes:	x:\doc\<<language>\release.txt
Release Notes (HTML):	x:\doc\<<language>\db2ir\index.htm

where:

- x: refers to your CD drive
- <language> refers to the language directory, consisting of a five-character code that corresponds to one of the languages in Table 41

UNIX operating systems

The files on the FixPak CD are located as follows:

Table 40. UNIX files

Files	Location
DB2 product files:	/cdrom/db2
Installation Prerequisites:	/cdrom/doc/<language>/install.txt
Installation Prerequisites (HTML):	/cdrom/doc/<language>/install.htm
License files:	/cdrom/db2/license
Release Notes:	/cdrom/doc/<language>/release.txt
Release Notes (HTML):	/cdrom/doc/<language>/db2ir/index.htm

where:

- /cdrom refers to your mount point
- <language> refers to the language directory, consisting of a five-character code that corresponds to one of the languages in Table 41

The following table outlines the language directory names and their corresponding languages.

Table 41. Directory names and their corresponding languages

Directory	Language
ar_AA	Arabic

Table 41. Directory names and their corresponding languages (continued)

Directory	Language
bg_BG	Bulgarian
cs_CZ	Czech
da_DK	Danish
de_DE	German
el_GR	Greek
en_US	English
es_ES	Spanish
fi_FI	Finnish
fr_FR	French
hr_HR	Croatian
hu_HU	Hungarian
it_IT	Italian
iw_IL	Hebrew
ja_JP	Japanese
ko_KR	Korean
nl_NL	Dutch
no_NO	Norwegian
pl_PL	Polish
pt_BR	Brazilian Portuguese
pt_PT	Portuguese
ro_RO	Romanian
ru_RU	Russian
sk_SK	Slovak
sl_SI	Slovenian
sv_SE	Swedish
tr_TR	Turkish
zh_CN	Simplified Chinese
zh_TW	Traditional Chinese

Notes:

1. The directory names might appear in uppercase or lowercase letters, depending on your operating system.
2. All of the directories in the preceding list might not appear on this CD because all language directories are not available on all CDs.
3. Starting with Version 8.2, the Installation Notes are a section in the Release Notes.

Appendix B. Contacting IBM

In the United States, call one of the following numbers to contact IBM:

- 1-800-IBM-SERV (1-800-426-7378) for customer service
- 1-888-426-4343 to learn about available service options
- 1-800-IBM-4YOU (426-4968) for DB2 marketing and sales

In Canada, call one of the following numbers to contact IBM:

- 1-800-IBM-SERV (1-800-426-7378) for customer service
- 1-800-465-9600 to learn about available service options
- 1-800-IBM-4YOU (1-800-426-4968) for DB2 marketing and sales

To locate an IBM office in your country or region, check IBM's Directory of Worldwide Contacts on the web at <http://www.ibm.com/planetwide>

Product information

Information regarding DB2 Universal Database products is available by telephone or by the World Wide Web at <http://www.ibm.com/software/data/db2/udb>

This site contains the latest information on the technical library, ordering books, product downloads, newsgroups, FixPaks, news, and links to web resources.

If you live in the U.S.A., then you can call one of the following numbers:

- 1-800-IBM-CALL (1-800-426-2255) to order products or to obtain general information.
- 1-800-879-2755 to order publications.

For information on how to contact IBM outside of the United States, go to the IBM Worldwide page at www.ibm.com/planetwide

Appendix C. Notices

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in all countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country/region or send inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation
Licensing
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku
Tokyo 106, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country/region where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:
INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product, and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information that has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Canada Limited
Office of the Lab Director
8200 Warden Avenue
Markham, Ontario
L6G 1C7
CANADA

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement, or any equivalent agreement between us.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems, and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements, or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility, or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

All statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information may contain examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious, and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information may contain sample application programs, in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM for the purposes of developing, using, marketing, or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs.

Each copy or any portion of these sample programs or any derivative work must include a copyright notice as follows:

© (your company name) (year). Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp. Sample Programs. © Copyright IBM Corp. *_enter the year or years_*. All rights reserved.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both, and have been used in at least one of the documents in the DB2 UDB documentation library.

ACF/VTAM	iSeries
AISPO	LAN Distance
AIX	MVS
AIXwindows	MVS/ESA
AnyNet	MVS/XA
APPN	Net.Data
AS/400	NetView
BookManager	OS/390
C Set++	OS/400
C/370	PowerPC
CICS	pSeries
Database 2	QBIC
DataHub	QMF
DataJoiner	RACF
DataPropagator	RISC System/6000
DataRefresher	RS/6000
DB2	S/370
DB2 Connect	SP
DB2 Extenders	SQL/400
DB2 OLAP Server	SQL/DS
DB2 Information Integrator	System/370
DB2 Query Patroller	System/390
DB2 Universal Database	SystemView
Distributed Relational Database Architecture	Tivoli
DRDA	VisualAge
eServer	VM/ESA
Extended Services	VSE/ESA
FFST	VTAM
First Failure Support Technology	WebExplorer
IBM	WebSphere
IMS	WIN-OS/2
IMS/ESA	z/OS
	zSeries

The following terms are trademarks or registered trademarks of other companies and have been used in at least one of the documents in the DB2 UDB documentation library:

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Intel and Pentium are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.



Printed in USA